Biblical Hebrew

Basic Grammar of the Hebrew Old Testament

John Pappas

A companion book for the Biblical Hebrew VPOD Internet Video Instruction Program

Table of Contents

Preface

Since the work done on the Bible Greek VPOD program is behind me, the reflection on and improvements considered are now made to the study of Hebrew. The basic idea is the same – Keep It Simple! That is the primary goal of any first year language study and Hebew needs that same treatment. While keeping it simple, I have tried to also keep the complexity inherent with Hebrew as every grammar includes multiple complex grammatical terms for what should be one simple term. This simplification is often a hard thing to accomplish since the first year student also needs to get aquanted with the technical terms yet at the same time not be lost because of an unrelated expression.

I must thank my Hebrew teacher, David Austin at Tyndale Seminary, Fort Worth, for his encouragement with both Hebrew and Greek. Also my doctrinal advisor and mentor Dr. Mal Couch who spent countless hours discussing language, theology, and life issues. They instilled in me the "keep it simple," philosophy that I, in turn, emphisize to my students. It is my hope that the student of this Hebrew grammar will find the complex made simple, while expanding in knowledge and understanding of the original Jewish author's meaning. That is the goal. It is not possible to interpret completely the thoughts of the original author without going to the original author's language. That means going back to the Hebrew and Greek. Just having a cursory knowledge of the original language helps greatly in the understanding of the Word.

The Method

The method used for learning the Hebrew of the Old Testament is based on the internet video Bible Hebrew VPOD produced by the author. This program is based on the three fundamentals:

- Chapter reading of the grammar book
- Video instruction using the Hebrew video lessons
- Then, back to the book for practice and exercises

This method is simple, straight to the point, and proven. It is the purpose of this method and program that the student will gain a quick understanding and confidence working with the language while the love and value of it grows.

Working the practice exercises is extremely valuable. There is no substitute for memorizing the vocabulary and translating the verses. The volume of words to memorize for each lesson is manageable, and the translation work limited to five or six verses. The selection is made in order for the student to become experienced in the subject of the chapter. The verses were selected for the most part because of their doctrinal meat not just verses for practice sake. Use a Bible, in fact several versions of the Bible when translating so as to get acquainted with variations. Do not get hung up on the variations – just do the basic translation work and wait until intermediate Hebrew to understand the variations.

May your time be spent in the Word, not around the Word. May the riches and depths of His Word bless you greatly.

Chapter One

The Story of Hebrew

Hebrew is the language of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Hebrew was the language of the Hebrews of the Egyptian bondage. Hebrew was the language the LORD Himself carved on stone tablets and gave to Moses on Mount Sinai. Technically, Hebrew is one of the Semitic languages categorized as West Semitic which includes the ancient languages of Ugaritic, Phoenician, and Canaanite.

Was Hebrew the original language of mankind? We cannot say, but we can say the Hebrew found in the Old Testament was not the original since it was written from around 1450 to 400 B.C. The earliest forms of a written language can be dated to around 3500 B. C. in the Near Eastern region of Sumer. And it is interesting to find archeological evidence to support the biblical account of the separation of languages (Gen. 11). Dr. Henry Morris provides a quote from Ralph Linton, one of the foremost anthropologists who says, "Writing was also a Near Eastern invention and one whose contribution to civilization has been even greater than that of metal … Writing appears almost simultaneously some 5000-6000 years ago in Egypt, Mesopotamia, and the Indus Valley."[1]

. It should be noted that even though one finds the written record of Sumer earlier than the written record of Hebrew, that in itself does not prove Hebrew did not exist as a distinct language at the same time. It only says the Hebrew dialect either was not a written language at the time of Sumer, or that Hebrew may have been a fully developed written language but without the societal dominance that Sumer experienced with all its preserved clay tablets.

The ancient Semitic division of languages includes the following four divisions:
- Eastern Semitic: Akkadian, Assyrian & Babylonian
- Southern: Arabic & Ethiopic
- Northern: Amorite & Aramaic
- Northwestern: Canaanite, Hebrew, Ugaritic & Phoenician

Within the northwestern Semitic division, the Canaanite division is the main category where all the dialects of the region are classified. The primary north Canaanite dialect is Ugaritic of ancient Ugarit containing a thirty character alphabet and of which much is known due to the large volume of clay tablets describing a rich culture of law, history, religion, business, and epic poetry.

The Moabite dialect of northwestern Canaan dates from 840 B.C. Our understanding of the Moabites apart from the Biblical record comes primarily from the Mesha Stone. The stone identified with the Moabite king Mesha tells how Chemosh, the god of Moab, had been angry with his people and had allowed them to be subjugated to

---

[1] Henry Morris, *Scientific Creationism* (Green Forest: Master Books, 2003), p. 193

Israel, but Chemosh returned and assisted Mesha to defeat Israel and restore the land to Moab. The stone describes many of Mesha's building projects.

The northern coastal region of Canaan was dominated by the Phoenician dialect. This was the region of Tyre, Sidon, Berytus, Tripolis and Byblos, involving all the foreign emigrants from Cyprus, Sicily, and North Africa. The Phoenician dialect becomes more important for the 5th to 2nd centuries BC.

Script

The script of Hebrew has developed from what is called the Early Hebrew through the generation to what is called the Square Hebrew. The Early Hebrew alphabet is the original script of the Hebrew Bible up to the pre-exilic writings. There was developed among the scribes a cursive script which served the scribe's quick flowing hand. It is the time of the Babylonian captivity that the square script moves to the Hebrew alphabet. Thought to be derived from the Aramaic script, the Hebrew developed into a distinctive Jewish type of script.[2]

While the square script was the most significant development of the Hebrew text, the second most important development was the vowel pointing. Hebrew developed with a consonant only system wherein one knew how to pronounce the vowel sound of the word based on tradition and some basic rules. A verb had an "a" vowel sound, while a noun possessed an "e" sound. During the Babylonian captivity the Hebrew almost lost their language but was somewhat restored, at least in Jerusalem, during the return. But it was in the midst of the great diaspora, between A.D. 600-950, that the Jewish scholars, the Masoretes, developed the vowel pointing system in an effort to preserve the original sound. What we have today in the original Hebrew text is not original but from the tradition of the Masorites.

Important Early Documents

Many Early Hebrew inscriptions, seals, coins, & etc. have been found that have helped us understand the early period of Hebrew. Many of these artifacts are dated to the time of King David, around 1000 B.C. Of particular importance are the biblically related works, but also the extra-biblical works, namely, (1) the Gezer Calendar, a schoolboy's exercise on a clay tablet dated to about 925 B.C. describing eight months of the agricultural activity. (2) The Siloam Inscription, dated 705 B.C., describing the completion of Hezekiah's Siloam water tunnel (2 Kings 20:20; 2 Chron. 32:3, 30; 33:14). (3) The Samaritan Ostraca dated 770 B.C. detailing the royal treasury and written in early Hebrew cursive script. (4) The Lachish Letters, dated 587 B. C., containing communications between the Jewish outpost commander and his superior at headquarters. These letters as well as those found in Ophel, Samaria, and Haror all were written in early Hebrew cursive.

The Biblical manuscripts known are mostly dated from Babylonian captivity (586 B.C.). Several factors play into this observation; (1) the preferred material used by Moses and others in Israel was the Egyptian papyrus (c. 3100 B.C). Made from Egyptian reed it was of high demand because of its quality and ability to roll into a scroll. While papyrus was the preferred Scriptural material its survivability was not good. (2) A second type of

---

[2] P.R. Ackroyd & C.F. Evans, gen, ed., The Cambridge History of the Bible (Cambridge: Cambridge Press, 1970), vol. 1, p. 16

material used was animal skins. This material could also be rolled into a scroll. All early scrolls found are of this type but are in very bad shape. Animal skin is much more durable than papyrus but still not a survivable material. (3) A third reason for the lack of pre-Babylonian manuscripts relates to the history of Israel as a nomadic people until King David and the struggle the nation encountered in the Promised Land.

      The primary places where scrolls would be located were the Temple which was destroyed by the Babylonians and the tribal priestly allocations which were destroyed by the various people groups before the Assyrian and Babylonian devastation. The lack of good manuscripts between the Babylonian period and the destruction of the Temple in A.D. 70 and subsequent expulsion in A.D. 132 is both remarkable and understandable. In fact, until the discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls in 1947, the earliest good manuscript fragment was the Nash Papyrus dated 1st or 2nd century A.D. from Egypt not Israel[3]. Because the Nash fragment is made of Egyptian Papyrus it is in very bad condition. It was not until 1947 when the Dead Sea Scrolls were found that a significant quantity of early biblical manuscript fragments dated 408 B.C. to A.D. 318 could be claimed.

Nash Papyrus. c. 1st – 2nd century B.C. Oldest manuscript fragment containing the Shema (Deut. 6:4-9) and parts of the Decalogue (Ex. 20; Deut. 5).

Orientales 4445. c. A.D. 820-850. This Pentateuch manuscript is in mixed condition. It contains Genesis 39:20-Deuteronomy 1:33. The codex is mostly legible.

Codex Cairensis. c. A.D. 895. Also called the Cairo Codex contains the Hebrew Prophets, the Former Prophets (Joshua, Judges, Samuel, & Kings) and the Latter Prophets (Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, & the twelve minor prophets). It contains the punctuation by Moses ben Asher. The codex has an interesting history as it was taken from Jerusalem in 1099 by the Crusaders, redeemed by the Jewish community in Cairo and returned to the Hebrew University in Jerusalem in 1983.

Aleppo Codex of the Whole Bible. c. A.D. 930. Copied in Tiberias by Shelomo ben Baya'a and pointed by Aaron ben Moses ben Asher. The manuscript is in mixed condition. Most of the Pentateuch is missing and other sections are missing but it represents an authoritive tradition where the great medieval Maimonides used and endorsed its accuracy. Its history is full of intrigue as it was plundered during the first Crusade, transferred to Egypt, then in 1375 transferred to Aleppo, Syria by Maimonides's descendants where it remained until 1947 when during the UN Partition riots the codex was smuggled out of Syria before the synagogue was burned and in 1958 presented to Israeli President Yitzhak ben Zvi.

Codex Leningradensis. c. A.D. 1008. This manuscript is in good condition. It is the earliest complete Old Testament known. Copied in Cairo by Samuel ben Jacob from manuscripts written by Aaron ben Moses ben Asher. This manuscript is the Hebrew text of Kittel's Biblia Hebraica (BHK) text (1937) and the Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia (BHS) (1977).

---

[3] Although modern scholarship places the Nash fragment 100-200 B.C.

Important Related Documents
There are two important early manuscripts to note, the Samaritan Pentateuch and the Greek Septuagint.

Samaritan Pentateuch. The Samaritan people are the result of intermarriage between Jewish and the peoples of the Samaria region during the divided kingdom stage. The division and identity of the Samaritans distinct from Israel continued through the Assyrian period and by the time of Jesus had an established Torah tradition and text. Israel to the north held only to the first five books of Moses, thus the Samaritan people established their tradition around the Pentateuch. The Samaritan Pentateuch was written in the script of the region called Paleo-Hebrew (Phoenician-Hebrew). It is this distinct script that helps date the Samaritan Pentateuch to the 2nd century B.C. What has been preserved today of a complete manuscript has the earliest date of the eleventh century A.D. The Samarian Pentateuch was translated into Aramaic in the early Christian era and is called the Samaritan Targum.

The Septuagint (LXX). The most important Old Testament work is no doubt the Greek translation of the Old Testament that occurred in Alexandria Egypt by the group of seventy (LXX) between 250 B.C. – 150 B.C. Ptolemy requested the translation from Hebrew to Greek (made by 6 scribes from each of the 12 tribes = 72, but simply called 70) for the thriving Greek speaking Alexandrian Jewish community. The translation included all twenty-two Jewish Old Testament books (thirty-nine English) plus fourteen additional writings called the Apocrypha ("hidden"). Thus the Septuagint helped in the Hellenization of Egypt.

The Character of Hebrew
Hebrew is a raw, graphic language, absent of the precise mathematical precession of the Greek. It is in this sense that the language provides the reader with a graphic view of the story. The literal translation of the fall illustrates this perfectly as the Hebrew reads, "dying you shall die," which is normally translated, "you shall surely die" (Gen. 2:17).

The sentence structure is simple. So simple in fact that a verb can be left out of the sentence altogether. An example of a noun sentence is, "Who [is] righteous?" Here, the, to be verb, "[is]," has to be added in the English.

The Hebrew verb tense is called a stem because it lacks time of action, instead focusing on kind or mode of action. The perfect verb expresses an action or state of being finished or complete. The imperfect verb expresses the action or state of being as incomplete or continuous.

The Hebrew language naturally moves in and out of an incredible array of literary techniques found in the Bible. Some literary techniques relate to the textural structure and serve to highlight a point, others relate to sound in order to make a play with words or make the sound and rhythm fun or conducive to song. Some of these literary techniques are listed below.

- Chiasm. An example of a chiasmus is, "whoever sheds man's blood, by man his blood shall be shed." (Gen. 9:6)
- Acrostic. An acrostic is found in Hebrew poetry where successive units of a poem begin with consecutive letters of the alphabet.

- Alliteration. An alliteration is the repetition of the same initial sounds or adjacent or nearby words.
- Chiasmus. A chiasmus is a figure of speech in which two or more clauses are related to each other through the reversal of the lines of a poetic structure in order to make a larger point. The two clauses are inverted parallelism.
- Parallelism. Parallelism is a figure of speech in which two or more clauses are related to each other through the lines of a poetic structure in order to make a larger point.

The Hebrew Alphabet

Hebrew has twenty-three letters to its alphabet as shown in the table below.

Letter	Final form	Name		Transliteration[4]	Pronunciation
א		אלף	ʾalĕf	ʾ	silent
בּ		בית	bêt	b	**b**all
ב			bêt	v (<u>b</u>)	**v**ine
גּ		גימל	gimĕl	g	**g**ift
ג			gimĕl	gh (<u>g</u>)	**gh**ost
דּ		דלת	dalĕt	d	**d**ebt
ד			dalĕt	th (<u>d</u>)	**th**e
ה		הא	hē'	h	**h**is
ו		וו	vāv (or wāw)	v or w	**v**ine or **w**ay
ז		זין	zāyĭn	z	**Z**ion
ח		חית	hêt	ch (ḥ)	Ba**ch**
ט		טית	têt	t (ṭ)	**t**all
י		יוד	yôd	y	**y**es
כּ	ך	כף	kăf	k	**k**ing
כ	ך		kăf	ch (<u>k</u>)	pea**ch**
ל		למד	lāmĕd	l	**l**ion
מ	ם	מם	mēm	m	**m**an
נ	ן	נון	nûn	n	**n**o
ס		סמך	sāmĕk	s	**s**in
ע		עין	ʿăyĭn	ʿ	silent
פּ	ף	פא	pē'	p	**p**et
פ	ף		pē'	ph (or f)	**f**at
צ	ץ	צדי	tsādê	ts (ṣ)	ne**ts**
ק		קוף	qôf	q	**k**ing
ר		ריש	rêš	r	**r**un
שׂ		שׂין	sîn	s	**s**in
שׁ		שׁין	shîn	sh (š)	**sh**ine
תּ		תו	tāv (tāw)	t	**t**oy
ת			tāv (tāw)	th (<u>t</u>)	**th**rone

[4] Transliteration is the process of assigning an English equivalent to the Hebrew letter.

Notice the five groupings. These are organized in four or five letters per group in order to help in the memorization process. It is far easier to memorize a group of four or five letters, then, once the group is memorized, move on to the next group. Memorize the letter, saying the name and writing the letter many times. Do this until the whole alphabet can be written without hesitation.

BeGaD KeFaT

Notice there are some letters that are repeated that contain a dot (ּ) within it (e.g., תּ). This dot is called a Daghesh Lene and indicates a hard pronunciation. These letters are called begadkephat (a composite built on the names of the six letters בגדכפת) as a way to remember the six letters. These letters are בּ, גּ, דּ, כּ, פּ, תּ. As you can see, Hebrew is written from right to left.

Final Form

There are five letters that contain a final form. A final form letter should be used when that letter is in the last position of the word.

letter	final form
כ	ך
מ	ם
נ	ן
פ	ף
צ	ץ

Final kaf ך has two special forms that come up a lot. Final kaf ךְ is written with a silent sheva (ְ) when it lacks a vowel and looks like ךְ. Likewise final kaf has the final qamets (ָ) placed inside it and looks like ךָ.

Certain letters sound alike

As you can tell some of the letter sound alike.

- ס, שׂ   - S, as in See
- כּ, ק   - K, as in keep
- ט, תּ   - T, as in Tom
- ב, ו   - V, as in Vine
- ח, כ   - CH, as in Bach
- א, ע   - Silent

The Vowels

Ancient Hebrew had no written vowels. The written vowels were added around AD 500 by the Masoretes who added them in order to preserve the language. It is not that the

language did not use vowels; it is just that there was no written form until later. The speaker would add the vowel as necessary. For example, all verbs (with exception) use the "a" sound while its noun equivalent will use the "e" sound in the first vowel position. The system they developed is called the pointing system whose intention is not to alter the established written form. The pointing added small *dots* and *symbols* below and above the character.

Drs. Pratico and Van Pelt give the following example, "Let us use the English translation of Deut. 6:5 as an example: 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart.' Without the vowels, we are left with a series of consonants, much like the ancient written form of Hebrew: Lv th Lrd yr Gd wth ll yr hrt. In order to read this sentence out loud, you would need to rely on your knowledge of English and supply the necessary vowels. In the same way, when Joshua read the entire law of Moses to the Israelites (Josh 8), he had before him a consonantal text with no vowels. This required Joshua to supply from memory the necessary vowels when reading."[5]

In the Hebrew, there are the "a," "e," "i," "o," and "u" vowel sounds as shown below.

Table of Full-Vowels

Group	Name	Sign	Position	Sound	Example
a	Qamets[6]	ָ	אָ	a, as in car	אָב father
	Pathach	ַ	אַ	a, as in bat	בַּת daughter
e	Tsere	ֵ	אֵ	e, as in they	אֵל God
	Tsere-Yod	ֵי	אֵי	e, as in they	בֵּית house
	Sᵉghol	ֶ	אֶ	e, as in met	שֶׁקֶל shekel
i	Hireq-Yod	ִי	אִי	i, as in marine	הִיא she
	Hireq	ִ	אִ	i, as in sit	עִם with
o	Holem	ֹ	אֹ	o, as in row	לֹא not
	Holem-Vav	וֹ	אוֹ	o, as in row	אוֹר light
	Qamets-Hatuf	ָ	אָ	o, as in cost	כָּל all
u	Shureq	וּ	אוּ	u, as in rule	הוּא he
	Qibbuts	ֻ	אֻ	u, as in rule	שֻׁלְחָן table

Long Vowels. The following table lists the Hebrew long vowels.

Sign	Name		Transliteration	Example		
ָ	qames	קָמֵץ	ā	אָב	'av	father
ֵ	sere	צֵרֵי	ē	אֵל	'el	God
ֹ	holem	חוֹלֶם	ō	לֹא	lo'	not

---

[5] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids:Zondervan, 2001), p. 8
[6] The older authors use qắmĕs, pắtăh, etc. The spelling is often different depending on the author. One thing the beginning student of Hebrew needs to know is that nothing is consistent between different authors in Hebrew.

Naturally long vowels. The following table lists the Hebrew naturally long vowels. Naturally long vowels are formed using either a *vav* (וֹ) or a *yod* (יֹ).

Sign	Name		Transliteration	Example		
ֵי	sere yod	צֵרֵי יוֹד	ê	בֵּית	beyth	house of
ִי	hireq yod	חִירֶק יוֹד	î	הִיא	hiy'	she
וֹ	holem vav	חוֹלֶם וָו	ô	אוֹר	'or	light
וּ	šureq	שׁוּרֶק	û	הוּא	hu'	he

Short Vowels. The following table lists the Hebrew short vowels.

Sign	Name		Transliteration	Sound	Example	
ַ	pataḥ	פַּתַח	ă	a, as in bat	בַּת	daughter
ֶ	sᵉgol	סֶגוֹל	ĕ	e, as in met	שֶׁקֶל	shekel
ִ	hireq	חִירֶק	ĭ	i, as in sit	עִם	with
ָ	qames håṭuf	קָמֶץ חָטוּף	ŏ	o, as in cost	כָּל	all
ֻ	qibbuṣ	קִבּוּץ	ŭ	u, as in rule	שֻׁלְחָן	table

The Half-Vowels

In addition to vowels, Hebrew makes use of semi-vowels or half-vowels. These half vowels make use of the *sheva* or *shewa* (שְׁוָא). There are two classes of *sheva*, the first is the vocal *sheva* which stands alone and is pronounced like an "e" as in בְּרִית (bᵉrit) pronounced "breet." It is transliterated as a superscript e as in bᵉrit. The other class is a silent *sheva* which is a *sheva* placed beneath a consonant that ends a syllable and sometimes placed in the final kaf (ךְ).

The other *sheva* is used as a compound with other vowels and makes a hurried vowel sound. The compound *shevas* are as follows:

First	Second	Compound	Name	Sounds like	Example		
ַ	ְ	ֲ	hatef - pathaḥ	hurried Pathach	אֲנִי	'ᵃniy	"I"
ֶ	ְ	ֱ	hatef- sᵉghol	hurried Sᵉghol	אֱנוֹשׁ	'ᵉnoš	"man"
ָ	ְ	ֳ	hatef- qameṭs	hurried Qamets	חֳלִי	holi	"sickness"

Daghesh Forte

The *Daghesh forte* is a dot in the letter which indicated one is to double the consonant in which it occurs. It is the same mark as the *daghesh lene* placed in the six consonants. For example in, הַבֵּן (habben) the *bet* is doubled.

The rules for a *daghesh forte* are as follows:

1. A dot in any letter other than a BaGad KeFaT letter is a *daghesh forte*.
2. A *daghesh forte* is *always* found immediately after a vowel, whereas a *daghesh lene* is *never* found after a vowel.

Gutturals

The gutturals are: א, ע, ה, ח, and sometimes ר. They are gutturals because they are pronounced from the back of the throat.

Sibilants

The sibilants are: ז, ס, צ, שׁ, and שׂ. They are classified as sibilants because of their "s" sounds.

Labials

The labials are: ב, מ, and פ.

Syllables

The word syllable comes to the English from the Greek *syllabē* meaning, "that which holds together," and applies to how a word is pronounced. A word or part of a word pronounced with a single, uninterrupted sound of the voice is a syllable. A Hebrew word has as many syllables as it has separate consonants. In general, words are broken up into syllables using the following rules:

- All syllables in a word must begin with a consonant.
- A syllable must include one full vowel or a half vowel.
- There are as many syllables as there are full vowels.
- A syllable will split the doubled letter of a *daghesh forte*. For example הַבֵּן is hab/ben.

Hebrew syllables are either open or closed. An open syllable is one that ends in a vowel and is normally a long vowel. A closed syllable is one that ends in a consonant and the vowel will normally be short.

Examples are:
- דָּבָר da/bar
- מְלָכִים me/la/kim

Hebrew syllable identification has the following formal naming convention:

- Antepenultima - 1st syllable
- Penultima - 2nd syllable
- Ultima - last syllable

EXAMPLE: מְלָכִים ME/LA/KIM		
כִים	לָ	מְ
Ultima	Penultima	Antepenultima
last syllable	2nd syllable	1st syllable

Accent Marks

There are twenty-seven prose and twenty-one poetic accents in the Hebrew[7]. The accent marks are about evenly divided between those that are placed above and those placed below the word. There are two main purposes for accent marks in the Hebrew. The first is to mark the tonal syllable, and secondly to serve as punctuation marks.

1. *Tonal syllable mark*. The accented syllable is normally the last syllable of the word, but it may also be the next to last. In the case where words are accented on any syllable other than the last the addition of a *munah* ( ) is added to the bottom of the word. For example, מֶ֣לֶךְ

2. *Punctuation marks*. There are two type of punctuation marks in the Hebrew (this grammar does not use these mark[8]):

   • *Disjunctive* (separating). There are many disjunctive marks, the top three are listed here; (i) to mark the end of the first half of the verse known as the *'atnah* (∧) and placed below the accented syllable of the last word of the first half of the verse; (ii) to mark the end of the verse known as the *silluq* ( ) and placed below the accented syllable of the last word in the last half of the verse; and (iii) the end of the verse is denoted by the *sof passuq* (:) that identifies the end of the sentence.

   • *Conjunctive* (joining). There are many conjunctive marks but one example is *nal^enal* ( ) placed below the letter.

A final word

The system of pronunciation recommended throughout this book stresses the use of the International Phonetic Association (IPA) system. Recognized symbols of the IPA system provide exact pronunciation applied to any language or culture.

Practice

A. Memorize the consonants (It is helpful to memorize the alphabet in groups of 5).
B. Memorize the vowels.

---

[7] That is, for the BHS. This text does not use accent marks. They are only referenced here in order to let you know that they exist and that you may refer to William R. Scott, *A Simplified Guide to BHS* (BIBAL Press, 1987).

[8] See Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar for a thorough discussion of special accent marks.

C. Memorize the half-vowels.
D. Transliterate the following proper names (remember – right to left):
   1. בית לחם (Mic. 5:1)
   2. בנימיו (Gen. 42:4)
   3. דוד (1 Sam. 16:23)
E. Write the following in Hebrew (remember – right to left):
   1. ysr'l
   2. hlk
   3. ywnₜn

Chapter Three

The Hebrew Noun

Vocabulary

אָב	father	הַר	mountain (m)
אָדָם	man	כֹּהֵן	priest (m)
אֲדָמָה	ground, earth (f)	לֵב	heart (m)
אָדוֹן אֲדֹנָי	lord (m)	מַיִם	water (m)
אָח	brother	נֶפֶשׁ	life, soul (f)
אִישׁ	man	נָבִיא	prophet (m)
אִשָּׁה	woman	סֵפֶר	book, scroll (m & f)
בַּת	daughter	עַיִן	eye, spring (f)
גּוֹי	nation, people (m)	עִיר	city (f)
דֶּרֶךְ	way, road (m & f)	קוֹל	voice, sound (m)

The Noun

Hebrew words are normally built upon three consonants known as the three consonant root; however, a few are formed with only two consonants, called a two consonant root word. Before the addition of the vowels, it was normal to place an "a" sound with verbs, and an "e" sound with its corresponding noun. For example, מָלַךְ "he ruled," is the verb, and מֶלֶךְ "king," is the noun. However, this rule is by no means universal and exceptions abound.

Hebrew nouns are derived from three sources: they may be primitive, derived from verbs, or derived from nouns.

1. *Primitive nouns*. Primitives have no known derivation and their number is small. Examples of primitives are:

   - אָב   father
   - אֵם   mother
   - דָּם   blood
   - שֵׁם   name
   - יָד   hand

2. *Nouns derived from verbs*. The vast majority of nouns are derived from verbs. Examples are:

- דָּבָר "word," from דִּבֶּר "he spoke."
- זֶרַע "seed," from זָרַע "he sowed."

3. *Nouns derived from nouns*. Nouns may also be derived from other nouns. Examples are:

- בּוֹקֵר "a herdsman," from בָּקָר "a herd."
- כֹּרֵם "a vine dresser," from כֶּרֶם "a vineyard."

Gender

Hebrew nouns are either masculine or feminine. There are no neuter nouns in Hebrew.

Masculine nouns. Masculine nouns have no distinct endings and are thus harder to identify with certainty. The only way to determine a masculine noun with certainty is to look it up in the lexicon.
1. Nouns that are uniquely male will be masculine. An example is: אָב father (m).

Feminine nouns. Feminine nouns can be identified in the following way:
1. Feminine nouns will normally be augmented with an ending of either הָ or ת. Examples are:

אֲדָמָה	(f) ground, earth	אָחוֹת	(f) sister
שָׁנָה	(f) year	בַּת	(f) daughter

2. Nouns that refer to female persons will be feminine. An example is: אֵם mother (f).

3. Masculine nouns can be made feminine by the addition of הָ . Examples are:

	Masculine			**Feminine**
מֶלֶךְ	(m) king	→	מַלְכָּה	(f) queen
נָבִיא	(m) prophet	→	נְבִיאָה	(f) prophetess
שַׂר	(m) prince	→	שָׂרָה	(f) princes

4. Nouns that refer to parts of the body existing in pairs are usually feminine. Example are:

יָד	(f) hand	עַיִן	(f) eye	רֶגֶל	(f) foot

Number

Hebrew nouns can be singular, dual, or plural. The rules for identification are as follows.

1. *Singular*. Singular nouns have no endings.
2. *Dual*. There are certain nouns that naturally occur in pairs like eyes and ears. For these nouns the dual is used and can be identified by the ending יִם (pataḥ + yod + hireq + final mem). Examples are:

אָזְנַיִם	(f) ears	יָדַיִם	(f) hands
כְּנָפַיִם	(f) wings	עֵינַיִם	(f) lips
מַיִם	(m) water	שָׁמַיִם	(m) heavens, sky

3. *Plural*. The Hebrew plural noun means three or more. Plural endings generally correspond to their gender, but are not always consistent. The singular forms sometimes undergo changes when augmented with their plural endings. These changes have to do with the language's vocalization.

   a. *Masculine plural endings*.
   - Most masculine plural nouns end with יִם (hireq-yod, followed by mem).

Singular			**Plural**	
סוּס	horse	→	סוּסִים	horses
הַר	mountain	→	הָרִים	mountains
דָּבָר	word	→	דְּבָרִים	words
מֶלֶךְ	king	→	מְלָכִים	kings
אִישׁ	man	→	אֲנָשִׁים	men
יוֹם	day	→	יָמִים	days
בֵּן	son	→	בָּנִים	sons

   - Some masculine plural nouns end with וֹת (holem-vav, followed by tov), which is the normal ending for the feminine plural noun.

Singular			**Plural**	
אָב	father	→	אָבוֹת	fathers
קוֹל	voice	→	קוֹלוֹת	voices
שֵׁם	name	→	שֵׁמוֹת	names

   b. *Feminine plural nouns*.
   - Most feminine plural nouns end with וֹת (holem-vav, followed by tov).

	Singular			**Plural**	
law	תּוֹרָה		→	תּוֹרוֹת	laws
מִצְוָה	commandment		→	מִצְוֹת	commandments
רוּחַ	spirit		→	רוּחוֹת	spirits
אֵם	mother		→	אִמּוֹת	mothers
בַּת	daughter		→	בָּנוֹת	daughters
נֶפֶשׁ	living being		→	נְפָשׁוֹת	living beings
אֶרֶץ	earth, land		→	אֲרָצוֹת	lands

- A few feminine plural nouns end with יִם (hireq-yod followed by final mem).

	Singular			**Plural**	
אִשָּׁה	woman		→	נָשִׁים	women
עִיר	city		→	עָרִים	cities

c. A few plural nouns can have a masculine or feminine ending.

	Singular			**Plural**	
דּוֹר	(m) generation	דּוֹרִים	→	דּוֹרוֹת	generations
שָׁנָה	(f) year	שָׁנִים	→	שָׁנוֹת	years

Summary

Noun Structure		
Number	**Gender**	
Three classifications	**Masculine**	**Feminine**
Singular	no ending	ה ָ or ת
Dual	יִם ַ	יִם ַ
Plural	יִם ָ (some וֹת)	וֹת (some יִם)

Letter Changes

Irregular stem changes. Some words undergo a consonantal change when made plural. These words are few in number and are referred to as irregular. Examples are: אִישׁ man changes to אֲנָשִׁים men; אִשָּׁה woman changes to נָשִׁים women.

Vowel changes in nouns with endings. The majority of changes to the word occur with the vowels when adding pluralization. These changes can result in reduction or contraction.

1. *Unchanged.* Some nouns take the pluralization without changing their fundamental vowels. These nouns:
   (a) possess long vowels and are monosyllabic - e,g., אוֹת sign → אוֹתוֹת signs.
   (b) possess two syllables with sheva ( ) or hatef - pathah ( ) in the first syllable, and an unchangeable long vowel in the second syllable – e.g., חֲלוֹם dream → חֲלוֹמוֹת dreams.
2. *Reduction.* Two syllable nouns possessing long ā qamets ( ) or long ē tsere ( ) in the first syllable reduce to a sheva ( ) – e.g., דָּבָר word → דְּבָרִים words. Two syllable nouns possessing sᵉghol ( ) are reduced to sheva or one of the half-vowels – e.g., מֶלֶךְ king → מְלָכִים kings; and סֵפֶר book → סְפָרִים book.

The Noun Sentence
A noun sentence is formed in Hebrew by placing two or more nouns together without a verb. In this case, the verb is added. An example is, יוֹסֵף אָח   "Joseph [is] a brother."

Practice
A. Identify the gender and number for the following nouns (e.g., סוּסִים : Mas. Pl., from סוּס horse).

1. אֲדָמָה
2. דְּבָרִים
3. דְּרָכִים
4. נְבִיאִים
5. עֵינַיִם
6. סְפָרִים

B. Make the following nouns plural.

1. אֲדָמָה (f)
2. אָב (m)
3. כֹּהֵן (m)
4. קוֹל (f)
5. אִשָּׁה (f)

Chapter Four

The Noun Prefixes

Vocabulary

אֵל	God (m)	מֶלֶךְ	king (m)
אֱלֹהִים	God, gods (m)	מֹשֶׁה	Moses
אֶרֶץ	earth (f)	סוּס	horse (m)
בַּיִת	house (m)	עֶבֶד	servant (m)
בֵּן	son (m)	פַּרְעֹה	Pharaoh
דָּבָר	word, thing (m)	צָבָא	host, army (m)
יְהוָה	Lord[9]	רֹאשׁ	head, chief (m)
יוֹם	day (m)	שֵׁם	name (m)
יְרוּשָׁלַם	Jerusalem (dual)	שָׁנָה	year (f)
יִשְׂרָאֵל	Israel	תּוֹרָה	law, Torah (f)

Gutturals

The gutturals are: א, ע, ה, ח, and sometimes ר. There are certain rules regarding gutturals. These rules are as follows:

    a. Gutturals cannot be doubled using the *daghesh forte*. When doubling is required, instead of using the *daghesh forte*, a preceding short vowel is left in an open, unaccented syllable, and the following lengthening occurs:

- If pathach, it will lengthen to a qamets.
- If hireq, it will lengthen to a tsere.
- If qibbuts, it will lengthen to holem.
- If the guttural is ה or ח then no lengthening takes place and the preceding syllable is treated as a closed syllable.

    b. Gutturals tend to use "a" class vowels. Examples are:

רָקִיעַ	firmament
נֹחַ	Noah
גָּבֹהַּ	high, exalted

---

[9] Most likely יהוה is pronounced Yahweh. Historically in English, Jehovah. יהוה is the covenant name of Israel's God and was regarded as too sacred to be pronounced. Pious readers avoided pronouncing it, instead substituting the vowels for אֲדֹנָי (ᵃdō-nāy) "Lord" or "my Lord." When Masoretic scholars began adding vowels to the text, they applied the vowels of אֲדֹנָי to the consonants of יהוה resulting in יְהוָה and for the most part spelled Jehovah in the English. On occasion the combination אֲדֹנָי יהוה appear together and the Masoretic scholars chose to point יהוה with the vowels of אֱלֹהִים resulting in יֱהוִה as found in Amos 1:8.

c. Gutturals tend to take compound shevas rather than simple shevas.[10] Initial א will use hatef-s^eghol (ֱ), whereas most others will use hatef - pathah (ֲ). On rare occasions a guttural will have a hatef- qamets (ֳ). Example are:

אֲשֶׁר	who, which, what
אֱלֹהִים	God
חֲלוֹם	dream
חֳלִי	sickness

Noun Prefixes

Hebrew noun extensions includes the prefixes and the suffixes. The prefixes include the definite article, vav (waw) conjunction, and prepositions. The suffixes include the pronominal nouns and a few special markers.

The Definite Article (ה)

To make a Hebrew noun definite, the addition of the definite article prefix is added to the word. The form of the article is not affected by the gender or number but is affected by how the word is spelled. There is no special marker for the indefinite article in Hebrew. A word without the definite article prefix is indefinite.

1. The definite article used for a noun whose initial consonant is a non-guttural (i.e., not א, ע, ה, ח, and ר) is הַ (הַ plus *daghesh forte* in the first consonant). Examples are:

Indefinite noun		Definite noun	
מֶלֶךְ	king or a king	הַמֶּלֶךְ	the king
יָד	hand or a hand	הַיָּד	the hand
לֵב	heart	הַלֵּב	the heart
נָבִיא	a prophet	הַנָּבִיא	the prophet

2. The definite article used for a noun whose initial consonant is a guttural (א, ע, ה, ח, and ר) is changed as follows:

a. If the initial consonant is ח, יְ (yod with a sheva), or מְ (mēm with a sheva), the definite article will not have the *daghesh forte* and is simply הַ (ה with pathach).

Indefinite noun		Definite noun	
חֶרֶב	a sword, sword	הַחֶרֶב	the sword
הֵיכָל	a temple, temple	הַהֵיכָל	the temple

---

[10] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew: An Introductory Grammar* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 23

יְלָדִים	children	הַיְלָדִים	the children
מְסִלָּה	highway	הַמְסִלָּה	the highway

b. If the initial consonant is א, ע, or ר, the definite article is changed to הָ (ה with qamets).

Indefinite noun		**Definite noun**	
רֹאשׁ	a head, head	הָרֹאשׁ	the head
אָב	a father, father	הָאָב	the father
עִיר	a city, city	הָעִיר	the city

c. If the initial consonant is חָ, הָ, or עָ, the definite article is changed to הֶ (ה with s^eghol).

Indefinite noun		**Definite noun**	
חָכָם	a wise man	הֶחָכָם	the wise man
עָפָר	dust	הֶעָפָר	the dust
הָרִים	mountains	הֶהָרִים	the mountains

3. Some nouns undergo internal changes when the definite article is added. Memorize the following[11]:

Indefinite noun		**Definite noun**	
אֶרֶץ	earth	הָאָרֶץ	the earth
הַר	mountain	הָהָר	the mountain
עַם	people	הָעָם	the people
גַּן	garden	הַגָּן	the garden
פַּר	bull	הַפַּר	the bull
חַג	festival	הֶחָג	the festival
אָרוֹן	ark	הָאָרוֹן	the ark

Special Use of the Definite Article
When translating the definite article also remember the following:
1. The definite article can be translated as a demonstrative pronoun with temporal words.

הַיּוֹם	this day (today)
הַשָּׁנָה	this year
הַפַּעַם	this time

---

[11] This list adopted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 26

2. The definite article can be translated with a vocative force.

   הַמֶּלֶךְ   O King!
   הַכֹּהֵן   O Priest!

The Vav Conjunction (וְ)

Hebrew makes extensive use of the vav (waw) conjunction. This conjunction is attached to the front of a word and is translated "and, but, also, even." For example, אִישׁ is "a man," but וְאִישׁ is "and a man." When a vav conjunction is added to a word, the following rules apply:

1. It is normally written וְ (vav plus simple sheva) before consonants pointed with full vowels except ב, מ, or פ.

Indefinite noun		Definite noun	
וָאָרֶץ	and earth	וְהָאָרֶץ	and the earth
וְאִישׁ	and man	וְהָאִישׁ	and the man

2. It is written וּ (shureq) before labials ב, מ, and פ, and before consonants pointed with a simple sheva, except yod.

וּבַיִת	and a house	וּמֶלֶךְ	and a king
וּפְרִי	and fruit	וּבֵין	and between

3. It is written as וִי (vav plus hireq-yod) before יְ (yod plus simple sheva).

וִירוּשָׁלַיִם	and Jerusalem	וִיהוּדָה	and Judah

4. When the consonant has a compound sheva the vav conjunction uses the short vowel corresponding to that compound sheva.

וַאֲנִי	and I	וֶאֱמֶת	and truth
וָחֳלִי	and sickness	וַאֲנָשִׁים	and men

5. It is written as וָ (vav plus qamets) before monosyllabic words or accented syllable of words with two or more syllables.

וָלֶחֶם	and bread
וָצֹאן	and sheep
טוֹב וָרָע	good and evil
תֹהוּ וָבֹהוּ	without form and void

The Prepositional Prefix

Hebrew has both standalone prepositions and prepositions prefixed to words.
Prepositional prefixes are called inseparable prepositions because they are inseparable
from their objects.

Hebrew has three inseparable prepositions:

- בְּ   in, by, with
- כְּ   as, like, according to
- לְ   to, for, at

The rules for attaching inseparable prepositions are as follows:

1. Prepositions attached before consonants that have full vowels, except with an
   accented syllable, use a simple *sheva*.

בְּשֵׁם	in a name	בְּרוּחַ	by a spirit
כִּדְבָר	according to a word	לְשָׁלוֹם	for peace

2. Prepositions attached before consonants that have simple (vocal) *sheva* attach
   with a *hireq*.

בִּדְבָרִים	with words	בִּשְׁאוֹל	in Sheol
כִּבְרִית	according to a covenant	לִפְרִי	for fruit
בִּירוּשָׁלַיִם	in Jerusalem	בִּיהוּדָה	in Judah

3. Prepositions attached before consonants with a compound *sheva* will take the
   short vowel of the compound *sheva*, except for the consonant א possessing a
   ḥatef- s^eghol (אֱ). For the case of אֱ the preposition takes the *tsere*.

בָּאֱמֶת	in truth	לָחֳלִי	for sickness
לֵאלֹהִים	for God	לֵאמֹר	to say

4. For prepositions attached before the definite article, the ה is dropped and the
   preposition takes its place.

אִישׁ	man
לְאִישׁ	for a man
הָאִישׁ	the man
לָאִישׁ	for the man

5. Prepositions attached to the tone syllable (accented syllable) of a noun, the vowel
   will often be *qamets*.

לְעַד	to eternity	לְמַיִם	to water

The translation of ל

1. The use of the lamed prefix can be translated as "have." For example, לְיוֹסֵף אָח "to Joseph [is] a brother," means, "Joseph has a brother."

2. When "brother" is in the predicate position the translation is: אָח לְיוֹסֵף "a brother to/of Joseph."

3. When lamed is used with a noun sentence the translation is:

predicate	subject	translation
אָח לְיוֹסֵף	בִּנְיָמִן	Benjamin [is] a brother to/of Joseph.

Relative Pronoun Prefix שֶׁ .

The relative pronoun prefix שֶׁ is translated as "who, which, that." The prefix is prefixed to a word along with the *Daghesh Forte* in the first consonant.

Example:

שֶׁטּוֹב   "who is good"

Interrogative prefix particle הֲ

A question in Hebrew may be asked by placing the interrogative particle הֲ to the first word of the phase. When the interrogative particle is prefixed to a word the following changes take place:
- Guttural consonants or a consonant containing the Sheva changes to הַ
- Guttural consonants followed by Qamets change to הֶ

Example:
הַאֵרֵד אַחֲרֵי פְלִשְׁתִּים   "Shall we go down after the Philistines?" (1 Sam. 14:37)

Practice

A. Identify the gender and number of the nouns and translate (e.g., סוּסִים : Mas. Pl., from סוּס horse).

1. יוֹסֵף וּבִנְיָמִן וּרְאוּבֵן אַחִים
2. לַאֲנָשִׁים יָדַיִם

B. Make the following nouns definite.
   1. רֹעֶה
   2. שָׂדֶה

C. Add the vav conjunction to the following nouns.
   1. מֹשֶׁה
   2. יוֹם

D. Translate the following:
   1. וּבָאָרֶץ
   2. וּבְיוֹם
   3. בַדָּבָר

Chapter Five

The Adjective

Vocabulary

אֶחָד	one	מְאֹד	very, exceedingly
גָּדוֹל	great, large	מְעַט	few, little
דַּל	poor	קָדוֹשׁ	holy
זָקֵן	old	קֹדֶשׁ	(noun) holy thing
חָדָשׁ	new	קָטֹן	small
חָזָק	strong	קָרוֹב	near
חָכָם	wise	קָשֶׁה	difficult, hard
טוֹב	good	רַב	many, much, great
יָפֶה	beautiful	רָחוֹק	far, distant
יָשָׁר	straight, right, just	רַע	evil

The Adjective

Hebrew adjectives, like English adjectives, serve to describe or limit a noun. For example, אָב טוֹב "a good father," further describes father. Compared to other languages, Hebrew has relatively few adjectives.

Number and Gender

The adjective will match the noun it is modifying in both number and gender. The masculine singular is the dictionary form also referred to as the *lexical form*. The other forms adhere to the following rules and do not change even if the noun being modified is irregular:

	Singular	Plural
Masculine	Dictionary form	ִים
Feminine	ָה	וֹת

Adding the adjective טוֹב number and gender		
אָב טוֹב	msg	A good father
אָבוֹת טוֹבִים	mpl	Good fathers
אִשָּׁה טוֹבָה	fsg	A good woman
נָשִׁים טוֹבוֹת	fpl	Good women

31

Usage of the adjective
The adjective can be used attributively, predicatively, or substantively.
1. *Attributive usage*. The attributive usage is the usage closest to English adjective, namely, the adjective modifies the noun, further describing it.
    a. Normally, the adjective is placed after the noun it modifies, but when emphasis is placed upon to adjective, it will be placed before the noun.
    b. The attributive adjective must agree in gender, number and definiteness with the noun it modifies. To agree in definiteness is to agree with the noun's definiteness. If the noun is definite, the adjective will also be definite.

אִישׁ טוֹב	A good man
הָאִישׁ הַטּוֹב	The good man

2. *Predicative usage*. The adjective can be used to construct a simple noun sentence where the noun functions as the subject and the adjective as the predicate. In this case the "to be" verb must be supplied in the English. In the predicative usage, the adjective usually stands before the noun, but occasionally it can be found after the noun.
    a. The predicate adjective must agree with its subject noun in gender and number, but it will never take the definite article, even if the noun is definite.

טוֹב הָאִישׁ	The man [is] good.
הַמָּקוֹם קָדֹשׁ	The place [is] holy.
טוֹבָה הָאָרֶץ מְאֹד	The land [is] exceedingly good.

3. *Substantive usage*. The adjective is used as an independent noun when no noun is present. When an adjective is used substantively, supply the gender noun "man, woman, or one."

טוֹב	A good man
טוֹבָה	A good woman

Adjectival Inflection
Certain changes take place to the vocalization and structure of adjectives when gender and number endings are added. These changes can be broken down to whether the singular form is monosyllabic or bisyllabic.
1. Rules for adding gender and number endings to adjectives that are monosyllabic.
    a. Monosyllabic adjectives with the unchangeable long vowels ִי, ֵ, ֹו, or וּ require no change.

	ms	mp	fs	fp[12]

---

[12] This table adapted from Kelly.

| good | טוֹב | טוֹבִים | טוֹבָה | טוֹבוֹת |
| empty | רֵיק | רֵיקִים | רֵיקָה | רֵיקוֹת |

b. Monosyllabic adjectives ending in non-gutturals and have short vowels retain their short vowels.

	ms	mp	fs	fp
living	חַי	חַיִּים	חַיָּה	חַיּוֹת
strong	עַז	עַזִּים	עַזָּה	עַזּוֹת
many	רַב	רַבִּים	רַבָּה	רַבּוֹת

c. Monosyllabic adjectives ending in gutturals and have short vowels have their short vowels lengthened to long vowels.

	ms	mp	fs	fp
bitter	מַר	מָרִים	מָרָה	מָרוֹת
evil	רַע	רָעִים	רָעָה	רָעוֹת

2. When adding gender and number endings to singular adjectives that are bisyllabic.
   a. The initial qamets of a bisyllabic singular adjective two syllables before the tone syllable is reduced to a vocal sheva. This occurs in one of two ways.
      (i) If the initial consonant of the bisyllabic adjective is a non-guttural, the qamets is reduced to a simple sheva ( ).

	ms	mp	fs	fp
great	גָּדוֹל	גְּדוֹלִים	גְּדוֹלָה	גְּדוֹלוֹת
old	זָקֵן	זְקֵנִים	זְקֵנָה	זְקֵנוֹת
right	יָשָׁר	יְשָׁרִים	יְשָׁרָה	יְשָׁרוֹת

      (ii) If the initial consonant of the bisyllabic adjective is a guttural, then the qamets is reduced to the compound sheva Hateph-Pathach ( ).

	ms	mp	fs	fp
new	חָדָשׁ	חֲדָשִׁים	חֲדָשָׁה	חֲדָשׁוֹת
strong	חָזָק	חֲזָקִים	חֲזָקָה	חֲזָקוֹת
wise	חָכָם	חֲכָמִים	חֲכָמָה	חֲכָמוֹת

   b. The bisyllabic adjective קָטֹן, "small," is irregular, the holem is replaced by patach and a dagesh-forte is added to the nun.

	ms	mp	fs	fp
small	קָטֹן	קְטַנִּים	קְטַנָּה	קְטַנּוֹת

   c. Bisyllabic adjectives ending in הָ will be dropped.

	ms	mp	fs	fp
beautiful	יָפֶה	יָפִים	יָפָה	יָפוֹת
difficult	קָשֶׁה	קָשִׁים	קָשָׁה	קָשׁוֹת

Practice

I. Identify the following and translate (identify as adj.m.sg, and n.m.sg. for nouns)

1. אִשָּׁה יָפָה
2. הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה
3. בְּרִית חֲדָשָׁה (Jer. 31:31)

II. Identify and translate the following predicate adjectives.

1. טוֹב הַדָּבָר (1 Kings 2:38)
2. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ זָקֵן מְאֹד (1 Kings 1:15)
3. טוֹב־וְיָשָׁר יְהוָה (Psalm 25:8)
4. קָרוֹב הַיּוֹם (Ezek. 7:7)
5. קָדוֹשׁ הַיּוֹם
6. אֵל גָּדוֹל יְהוָה (Ps. 95:3)

Chapter Six

Prepositions

Vocabulary

חָכְמָה	wisdom	מִי	who?
טָהוֹר	clean, pure	מִצְוָה	command
יְהוּדָה	Judah	עַדִּיק	righteous, just
כַּאֲשֶׁר	as, when	עָנִי	poor, afflicted
כִּי	because, for	עַתָּה	now
כֹּל	all, every, whole	פֶּה	mouth
כֵּן	thus, so	רָשָׁע	wicked, guilty
לְמַעַן	for the sake of, on account of, in order that	שָׂדֶה	field
לָמָה	why?	שֹׁפֵט	judge
מָה	what?	שִׁיר	song

Hebrew Prepositions

Hebrew prepositions like English prepositions are words that express spatial or temporal relations[13]. The word preposition comes from the Latin *praepōnĕre* meaning, "to put before, place before." Though prepositions are placed before a substantive indicating its relation to the verb, prepositions may also be placed at the head of a phrase (e.g., "in the book"). In English, prepositions may be placed at the end of a phrase (e.g., "what is it that you believe in?"). When the preposition is placed at the head of the phrase, it marks out a prepositional phrase.

Hebrew also has the three inseparable prepositional prefixes:

- בְּ   in, by, with
- כְּ   as, like, according to
- לְ   to, for, at

---

[13] Prepositions may also communicate origin, instrument, agent, interest, cause, and goal.

The basic Hebrew prepositions are:

אַחֲרֵי אַחַר	behind, after		מִן	from, out of
אֶל	to, toward		נֶגֶד	before
אֵצֶל	beside, near		עַד	until, unto
אֵת	with		עַל	upon, above, about
בֵּין	between		עִם	with
בַּעַד	behind, around		תַּחַת	under, instead of

Compound Prepositions

Preposition			Compound of:	
בְּתוֹךְ	in the midst, middle	בְּ	תָּוֶךְ	
לִפְנֵי	before, in front of	לְ	פָּנִים	"face"
מֵאֵת	from with	מִן	אֵת	
מִלִּפְנֵי	away from, from before, on account of	מִן	לִפְנֵי	
מֵעַל	from upon, above	מִן	עַל	
מִפְּנֵי	away from, out from, on account of, because of	מִן	פָּנִים	
מִתַּחַת	from under	מִן	תַּחַת	
מִתּוֹךְ	from the midst of	מִן	תָּוֶךְ	
עַל-דְּבַר	on account of	עַל	דְּבַר	
עַל-פְּנֵי	in the face of, before, opposite to	עַל	פָּנִים	

Special Rules for מִן "from, out of"
The following changes apply:
a. Before nouns with the definite article, מִן is joined using the *maqqef*.
   i. מִן-הָאָרֶץ "from the earth"
   ii. מִן-הַיּוֹם "from the day"
b. Before indefinite nouns possessing non-guttural[14] initial consonant, מִן undergoes major changes dropping the final *nun* and a *hireq* plus a *dagesh forte* is added to the initial consonant.

מִן	+	בַּיִת	→	מִבַּיִת	from a house
מִן	+	מֶלֶךְ	→	מִמֶּלֶךְ	from a king

c. When מִן is before a *yod* pointed with a simple *sheva* it contracts to מִי.

---

[14] The gutturals are א, ע, הֶ חָ and sometimes ר.

| מִן | + | יְהוּדָה | → | מִיהוּדָה | from Judah |
| מִן | + | יְרוּשָׁלַם | → | מִירוּשָׁלַיִם | from Jerusalem |

d.   Before indefinite nouns whose initial consonant is a guttural, מִן changes to a *mem* plus a *tsere*.

מִן	+	אִישׁ	→	מֵאִישׁ	from a man
מִן	+	הַר	→	מֵהַר	from a mountain
מִן	+	עִיר	→	מֵעִיר	from a city
מִן	+	ראשׁ	→	מֵראשׁ	from a head

Usage of מִן as a comparative

a.   The preposition מִן can be used as a comparative to express "better." Dr. Kelley offers the following examples[15]:

טוֹב הָאוֹר מִן־הַחשֶׁךְ   "*better* [is] the light *than* the darkness."

טוֹב הַבֹּקֶר מִן־הָעֶרֶב   "*better* [is] the morning *than* the evening"

b.   The preposition מִן can be used as a comparative to express "too…for." Drs. Pratico & Van Pelt give the following example[16]:

קָשָׁה הָעֲבוֹדָה מֵהָאֲנָשִׁים   "The work [is] *too* difficult *for* the men."

Usage of מִן as a superlative

The preposition מִן can be used as a superlative.

   1. In the simple since:

   מִגְּדוֹלָם וְעַד־קְטַנָּם   "from the *greatest* of them to the least"

   2. The preposition מִן used with כֹּל functions as the superlative "best."

   עָרוּם מִכֹּל חַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה   "the *most* clever living thing of the field."

Usage of מִן as a partitive

The preposition מִן can be used to function as the partititive "some." For example:

   מֵהָאֲנָשִׁים   "*some* of the men."

---

[15] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew: An Introductory Grammar* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p.30
[16] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Bible Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2001). P. 54

The Sign of the Direct Object

The sign of the Direct Object (SDO) is אֵת/אֶת־ and identifies the direct object that receives the action of the verb. The direct object may be either definite or indefinite. If the direct object is definite, it is usually preceded by the particle אֵת. In this case, the particle אֵת serves as a "sign" and is not translated. The SDO can stand alone or joined to the direct object using the *maqqef*. Do not confuse the SDO with the preposition אֵת "with;" though they are spelled the same, context must be used to distinguish between the two.

בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֵת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ	In the beginning God created **the heavens and the earth.** (Gen. 1:1)
וַיַּרְא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאוֹר כִּי־טוֹב	And God saw **the light** that [it was] good. (Gen. 1:4)

Practice
    I. Memorize all the prepositions.
   II. Translate the following:
       1. אַחַר הַדְּבָרִים
       2. וּבֵין עֲשֶׂרֶת יָמִים
       3. כָּל־הֶהָרִים הַגְּבֹהִים אֲשֶׁר־תַּחַת כָּל־הַשָּׁמָיִם

Chapter Seven

Pronouns

Vocabulary

אֹהֶל	tent (m)	יֶלֶד	male child, boy (m)
אַחֵר	another	כֶּסֶף	silver (m)
אֵיךְ	how?	מִזְבֵּחַ	altar (m)
בֹּקֶר	morning (m)	מָקוֹם	place (m)
בָּשָׂר	flesh (m)	מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, justice (m)
גַּם	also, indeed	עוֹד	yet, still, again
דָּם	blood (m)	עָנָן	cloud (m)
הֵיכָל	palace, temple (m)	שַׁעַר	gate (m)
זָהָב	gold (m)	שָׁמַיִם	heaven, sky (m, du.)
יָד	hand (f)	שַׂר	leader, prince (m)

Hebrew Pronouns

Like English pronouns, Hebrew pronouns replace a noun. The noun that it replaces is called the antecedent. In the statement, יְהוָה הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים "The LORD, he [is] God" the pronoun "he" refers back to the nearest antecedent "LORD." The word pronoun comes from the Latin *pro* meaning "before, for," and *nomen* meaning "a name." Hebrew pronouns include personal, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative.

Independent Personal Pronouns

Independent personal pronouns are used to reduce repetition. Independent personal pronouns may be used as the subject of the verb but not the object of the verb. They may also appear as subjects of a verbless clause. Personal pronouns function as follows:
1. First person pronouns "I" and "we" refer to the person speaking.
2. Second person pronoun "you" refers to the person being spoken to.
3. Third person pronouns "he," "she," and "it," refer to the person or thing spoken of.

	Hebrew	Translation		Hebrew	Translation
1cs[17]	אֲנִי or אָנֹכִי	I	1cp	אֲנַחְנוּ	we
2ms	אַתָּה	you	2mp	אַתֶּם	you
2fs	אַתְּ	you	2fp	אַתֵּנָה	you
3ms	הוּא	he/it	3mp	הֵם or הֵמָּה	they
3fs	הִיא	she/it	3fp	הֵן or הֵנָּה	they

Usage of the personal pronoun

Independent personal pronouns may be used in the following ways:

1. *Normal usage*. The independent personal pronoun is used normally as follows:
   a. וַאֲנִי הִנְנִי מֵקִים אֶת־בְּרִיתִי אִתְּכֶם "And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you " (Gen. 9:9)
2. *Predicative usage*. Hebrew independent personal pronouns can be used as subjects and are often verbless clauses called predicative relationship. In this case the "to be" verb is must be understood.
   a. אֲנִי יְהוָה   "I [am] the LORD." (Gen. 28:13)
   b. יְהוָה הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים   "The LORD, he [is] God." (1 Kgs. 18:39)
3. *Emphatic usage*. The Hebrew independent personal pronoun can be used to emphasize the subject's involvement in the action. The personal pronoun is used next to the suffixed pronoun[18].
   a. בִּי־אֲנִי אֲדֹנִי הֶעָוֹן "On me, my Lord, is the guilt." (1 Sam. 25:24)

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns serve to point out someone or something being singled out for attention. For example, "this man" points out this specific man. Demonstrative pronouns may be either near "this" or far "that."

	singular		plural	
masc.	זֶה	this	אֵלֶּה	these
fem.	זֹאת	this	אֵלֶּה	these
masc.	הוּא	that	הֵם or הֵמָּה	those
fem.	הִיא	that	הֵן or הֵנָּה	those

Usage of the demonstrative pronoun

Demonstrative pronouns may act attributively or predicatively.

1. *Attributive usage*. Demonstrative pronouns may be used as an adjective agreeing in gender, number, and definiteness.

---

[17] cs and cp are common singular and common plural respectively. Common refers to gender covering both masculine and feminine subjects.

[18] Pronominal suffixes will be covered in the next chapter.

A. Examples are:
   a. הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת "this land" (Gen. 15:7)
   b. בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא "on that day" (Gen. 15:18)
   c. הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה "these words" (Gen. 29:13)
B. When a noun is modified by an adjective, the demonstrative pronoun will stand after the adjective. Examples are:
   a. הַדָּבָר הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה "this great thing" (1 Sam. 12:16)
   b. הַמִּדְבָּר הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא "that great wilderness" (Deut. 1:19)
   c. הַשָּׁנִים הַטֹּבֹת הָאֵלֶּה "these good years" (Gen. 41:35)
2. *Predicative usage*. Demonstrative pronouns may be used like a predicative adjective agreeing in gender and number with the noun it is linked with. With this usage, the demonstrative pronoun will never take the article.
   b. זֶה הַיּוֹם "This [is] the day" (Judg. 4:14)
   c. אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים "these [are] the words" (Deut. 1:1)
   • When a noun is modified by an adjective, the demonstrative pronoun will stand after the adjective.
   a. הוּא הָעִיר הַגְּדֹלָה "that [is] the great city" (Gen. 10:12)

Relative Pronoun

The Hebrew relative pronoun אֲשֶׁר "who, which, that," introduces a relative clause and the noun it modifies. The relative pronoun does not possess gender or number; it simply stands alone following the noun it modifies or is attached to the noun with the *maqqef*.

זֹאת בְּרִיתִי אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁמְרוּ "This [is] my covenant which you shall keep." (Gen. 17:10)

Interrogative Pronouns
The interrogative pronoun is used when asking questions. The Hebrew interrogative pronouns do not possess gender or number and includes the following:

מִי "who?, whom?"
מָה "what?"

The interrogative מָה has alternate spellings as: מַה or מֶה.

מִי־כָמֹכָה בָּאֵלִם יְהוָה "Who is like you O Lord, among the gods?" (Ex. 15:11)

Practice

I. Memorize the independent personal pronouns.
II. Memorize the demonstrative pronouns.

Chapter Eight

Hebrew Suffixes

Vocabulary

אוֹר	light (f)	יָם	sea (m)
אָחוֹת	sister	כֹּה	thus, so
אֵם	mother	לִפְנֵי	before
אֲשֶׁר	who, which, what	נְאֻם	utterance (m)
בְּרִית	covenant (f)	עַד	until, unto
גַּן	garden	עוֹלָם	forever, eternity (m)
חַג	feast, festival (m)	עוֹף	bird (m)
חַי	life (adj)	עַם	people (m)
חֶרֶב	sword (f)	רוּחַ	spirit, wind (f)
חֹשֶׁךְ	darkness (m)	שָׁלוֹם	peace (m)

Hebrew Pronominal Suffixes

A pronoun may appear as a prefix placed on a word in Hebrew. These endings are called pronominal suffixes and can be attached to nouns, prepositions, particles, or verbs. Pronominal suffixes have person, gender, and number. When pronominal suffixes are attached to nouns, prepositions and the Sign of the Direct Object, they may have a possessive (his, her, our) or an objective (him, her, us) meaning[19].

    i.   Pronominal suffixes attached to nouns have a possessive (his, her, our) sense.

    ii. Pronominal suffixes attached to prepositions or the Sign of the Direct Object have an objective (him, her, us) sense (i.e. they serve as objects).

    iii. Pronominal suffixes attached to particles may be expressed as possessive or as a direct object.

    iv. Pronominal suffixes attached to verbs normally serve as the direct object of the verb.

In addition, gender is identified with all forms except first person singular and plural which are common (1cs & 1cp).

---

[19] Gesenius prefers to use the classic terms genitive for possessive and accusative for the direct object.

Pronominal Suffixes for Nouns

Pronominal Suffixes appearing with nouns have a possessive sense. For example, קוֹלִי is translated, "my voice."

1. Pronominal suffixes for singular nouns (Masc. or Fem.). Nouns ending with ה will frequently drop this ending before adding the pronominal suffix (the feminine noun will replace ה with ת):

1 cs	ִי	my		1 cp	ֵנוּ	our
2 ms[20]	ְךָ	your		2 mp	ְכֶם	your
2 fs[21]	ֵךְ	your		2 fp	ְכֶן	your
3 ms	וֹ	his		3 mp	ָם	their
3 fs	ָהּ	her		3 fp	ָן	their

    a. Example for קוֹל "voice":

1 cs	קוֹלִי	my voice		1 cp	קוֹלֵנוּ	our voice
2 ms	קוֹלְךָ	your voice		2 mp	קוֹלְכֶם	your voice
2 fs	קוֹלֵךְ	your voice		2 fp	קוֹלְכֶן	your voice
3 ms	קוֹלוֹ	his voice		3 mp	קוֹלָם	their voice
3 fs	קוֹלָהּ	her voice		3 fp	קוֹלָן	their voice

    b. Example for תּוֹרָה "law" (fem):

1 cs	תּוֹרָתִי	my law		1 cp	תּוֹרָתֵנוּ	our law
2 ms	תּוֹרָתְךָ	your law		2 mp	תּוֹרַתְכֶם	your law
2 fs	תּוֹרָתֵךְ	your law		2 fp	תּוֹרַתְכֶן	your law
3 ms	תּוֹרָתוֹ	his law		3 mp	תּוֹרָתָם	their law
3 fs	תּוֹרָתָהּ	her law		3 fp	תּוֹרָתָן	their law

2. Pronominal suffixes for plural nouns (Masc. or Fem.). When a pronominal suffix is added to a masculine plural noun the noun's plural ending is dropped. Since the plural ending is missing, the plural characteristic is identified by the plural suffix:

1 cs	ַי	my		1 cp	ֵינוּ	our
2 ms	ֶיךָ	your		2 mp	ֵיכֶם	your
2 fs	ַיִךְ	your		2 fp	ֵיכֶן	your
3 ms	ָיו	his		3 mp	ֵיהֶם	their
3 fs	ֶיהָ	her		3 fp	ֵיהֶן	their

---

[20] Final kaf ך will have its final qamets (ָ) placed inside the letter and looks like ךָ .

[21] Final kaf ך is written with a silent sheva (ְ) when it lacks a vowel and looks like ךְ.

a. Example for אֱלֹהִים "gods, God":

1 cs	אֱלֹהַי	my God	1 cp	אֱלֹהֵינוּ	our God
2 ms	אֱלֹהֶיךָ	your God	2 mp	אֱלֹהֵיכֶם	your God
2 fs	אֱלֹהַיִךְ	your God	2 fp	אֱלֹהֵיכֶן	your God
3 ms	אֱלֹהָיו	his God	3 mp	אֱלֹהֵיהֶם	their God
3 fs	אֱלֹהֶיהָ	her God	3 fp	אֱלֹהֵיהֶן	their God

b. Example for תּוֹרוֹת "laws" (fem):

1 cs	תּוֹרוֹתַי	my laws	1 cp	תּוֹרוֹתֵינוּ	our laws
2 ms	תּוֹרוֹתֶיךָ	your laws	2 mp	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶם	your laws
2 fs	תּוֹרוֹתַיִךְ	your laws	2 fp	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶן	your laws
3 ms	תּוֹרוֹתָיו	his laws	3 mp	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם	their laws
3 fs	תּוֹרוֹתֶיהָ	her laws	3 fp	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶן	their laws

Pronominal Suffixes with Prepositions

The forms of the pronominal suffixes used with prepositions are as follows:

1 cs	יּ	me	1 cp	נוּ	us
2 ms	ךָ	you	2 mp	כֶם	you
2 fs	ךְ	you	2 fs	כֶן	you
3 ms	וֹ	him	3 mp	הֶם	them
3 fs	הַ	her	3 fs	הֶן	them

1. Pronominal suffixes with inseparable prepositions בְּ and לְ are as follows:

a. בְּ "in, by, with"

1 cs	בִּי	in/by me	1 cp	בָּנוּ	in/by us
2 ms	בְּךָ	in/by you	2 mp	בָּכֶם	in/by you
2 fs	בָּךְ	in/by you	2 fp	בָּכֶן	in/by you
3 ms	בּוֹ	in/by him	3 mp	בָּהֶם	in/by them
3 fs	בָּהּ	in/by her	3 fp	בָּהֶן	in/by them

b. לְ "to, for"

1 cs	לִי	to/for me	1 cp	לָנוּ	to/for us
2 ms	לְךָ	to/for you	2 mp	לָכֶם	to/for you
2 fs	לָךְ	to/for you	2 fp	לָכֶן	to/for you
3 ms	לוֹ	to/for him	3 mp	לָהֶם	to/for them
3 fs	לָהּ	to/for her	3 fp	לָהֶן	to/for them

2. The inseparable preposition כְּ "as, like," and preposition מִן "from, away from" are irregular.

a. Inseparable preposition כְּ "as, like."

1 cs	כָּמוֹנִי	as/like me	1 cp	כָּמוֹנוּ	as/like us
2 ms	כָּמוֹךָ	as/like you	2 mp	כָּכֶם	as/like you
2 fs	כָּמוֹךְ	as/like you	2 fp	כָּכֶן	as/like you
3 ms	כָּמוֹהוּ	as/like him	3 mp	כָּהֶם	as/like them
3 fs	כָּמוֹהָ	as/like her	3 fp	כָּהֶן	as/like them

b. Preposition מִן "from, away from."

1 cs	מִמֶּנִּי	from me	1 cp	מִמֶּנּוּ	from us
2 ms	מִמְּךָ	from you	2 mp	מִכֶּם	from you
2 fs	מִמֵּךְ	from you	2 fp	מִכֶּן	from you
3 ms	מִמֶּנּוּ	from him	3 mp	מֵהֶם	from them
3 fs	מִמֶּנָּה	from her	3 fp	מֵהֶן	from them

Notice the identical forms for 3ms and 1cpl.

3. Prepositions that take the daghesh forte in the final consonant before pronominal suffixes. Some prepositions have an alternate form.

a. אֵת "with" (not the Sign of the Direct Object used with the direct object). Note the alternate spelling is found.

		Alt				Alt	
1 cs	אִתִּי	אוֹתִי	with me	1 cp	אִתָּנוּ	אוֹתָנוּ	with us
2 ms	אִתְּךָ	אוֹתְךָ	with you	2 mp	אִתְּכֶם	אֶתְכֶם	with you
2 fs	אִתָּךְ	אוֹתָךְ	with you	2 fp			
3 ms	אִתּוֹ	אוֹתוֹ	with him	3 mp	אִתָּם	אוֹתָם	with them
3 fs	אִתָּהּ		with her	3 fp			

46

b. עִם "with"

1 cs	עִמִּי	with me	1 cp	עִמָּנוּ	with us
2 ms	עִמְּךָ	with you	2 mp	עִמָּכֶם	with you
2 fs	עִמָּךְ	with you	2 fp	עִמָּכֶן	with you
3 ms	עִמּוֹ	with him	3 mp	עִמָּם	with them
3 fs	עִמָּהּ	with her	3 fp	עִמָּן	with them

4. The prepositions לִפְנֵי "before, in front of" and אֶל "to, unto" take pronominal suffixes that are the same as those for plural nouns.

a. לִפְנֵי "before" is formed by the plural construct of פָּנִים "face," and the preposition לְ "to."

1 cs	לְפָנַי	before me	1 cp	לְפָנֵינוּ	before us
2 ms	לְפָנֶיךָ	before you	2 mp	לִפְנֵיכֶם	before you
2 fs	לְפָנַיִךְ	before you	2 fp		
3 ms	לְפָנָיו	before him	3 mp	לִפְנֵיהֶם	before them
3 fs	לְפָנֶיהָ	before her	3 fp		

b. אֶל "to, unto"

1 cs	אֵלַי	unto me	1 cp	אֵלֵינוּ	unto us
2 ms	אֵלֶיךָ	unto you	2 mp	אֲלֵיכֶם	unto you
2 fs	אֵלַיִךְ	unto you	2 fp	אֲלֵיכֶן	unto you
3 ms	אֵלָיו	unto him	3 mp	אֲלֵיהֶם	unto them
3 fs	אֵלֶיהָ	unto her	3 fp	אֲלֵיהֶן	unto them

c. עַל "on, upon."

1 cs	עָלַי	on me	1 cp	עָלֵינוּ	on us
2 ms	עָלֶיךָ	on you	2 mp	עֲלֵיכֶם	on you
2 fs	עָלַיִךְ	on you	2 fp	עֲלֵיכֶן	on you
3 ms	עָלָיו	on him	3 mp	עֲלֵיהֶם	on them
3 fs	עָלֶיהָ	on her	3 fp	עֲלֵיהֶן	on them

Pronominal Suffixes with particles

1. אֵת Sign of the Direct Object (SOD)[22] .

---

[22] Kelly uses the holem-vav (וֹ) as opposed to the holem (ֹ) (e.g. אֹתִי).

1 cs	אֹתִי	me	1 cp	אֹתָנוּ	us
2 ms	אֹתְךָ	you	2 mp	אֶתְכֶם	you
2 fs	אֹתָךְ	you	2 fp	אֶתְכֶן	you
3 ms	אֹתוֹ	him	3 mp	אֹתָם	them
3 fs	אֹתָהּ	her	3 fp	אֹתָן	them

2.   הִנֵּה   "behold!"

1 cs	הִנְנִי	הִנֵּנִי	behold, I	1 cp	הִנֵּנוּ הִנֶּנּוּ	behold, we
2 ms		הִנְּךָ	behold, you	2 mp	הִנְּכֶם	behold, you
2 fs		הִנָּךְ	behold, you	2 fp		
3 ms		הִנּוֹ	behold, he	3 mp	הִנָּם	behold, they
3 fs				3 fp		

Practice
1. Memorize pronominal suffixes for singular nouns (Masc. or Fem.).
2. Identify the following (e.g. יָדִי "my hand" 1cs)
   a. יֶדְכֶם
   b. יְדֵיכֶם
   c. דְּבָרֶךָ
   d. דִּבְרֵיהֶם
   e. אֲבוֹתֵינוּ
3. Translate the following:
   a. יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת עִמָּנוּ (Ps. 46:12)
   b. וַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת עִמּוֹ (2 Sam. 5:10)

Chapter Nine

Construct Nouns

Vocabulary

אֶבֶן	stone (f)	מַלְכָּה	queen (f)
אֱמֶת	truth (f)	מִצְרַיִם	Egypt
אֵשׁ	fire (f)	נַעַר	lad
חַיָּה	living thing, animal (f)	עֵת	time (f)
חָכְמָה	wisdom (f)	פֶּה	mouth (m)
חֶסֶד	goodness, kindness (m)	רֶגֶל	foot (f)
יַיִן	wine (m)	רַע	evil
כּוֹכָב	star (m)	רָעָה	evil (f)
לֶחֶם	bread (m)	שֶׁמֶן	oil, fat (m)
מִדְבָּר	wilderness, desert (m)	תְּהוֹם	abyss, great deep (f)

Construct Relationship

Drs Pratico and Van Pelt say, "There is no word for "of" in biblical Hebrew. Rather, Hebrew expresses the "of" (possessive) relationship between two nouns by what is called the construct chain. For those who have studied Greek, the construct chain is Hebrew's rough equivalent of the genitive case."[23]

Hebrew nouns can either be in the absolute or construct state. The singular absolute state is the dictionary form that is listed in the lexicon. When a noun is joined with other nouns it will sometimes experience shorting. The joining may either be by simple juxtaposition or by the use of a *maqqef*. The final noun that is joined must remain in the absolute state, while the noun that proceeds it must take the form of the construct state.

The construct relationship can be described as a chain jointing together two or more nouns in a sentence.

---

[23] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew Grammar* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2001), p. 97

49

Absolute state ⟶ יוֹם חֹשֶׁךְ ⟵ Construct state

"A day of darkness"

Absolute state ⟶ דְּבַר־אֱלֹהִים ⟵ Construct state

"word of God"
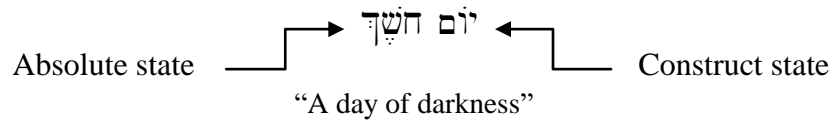
I. Rules for construct relationship

A. Plural Construct Nouns

1. *Shorting of plural construct nouns*. The construct plural noun is shortened when it is in the construct state. The following rules apply.

  a. *Masculine plural noun*. When a masculine plural noun is placed in the construct state, its ending is reduced from ִים to ֵי and long vowels are reduced to vocal *shevas*.

Plural absolute			Plural construct	
בָּנִים	sons	→	בְּנֵי	sons of

  b. *Masculine plural noun*. When a masculine plural noun ending with וֹת is placed in the construct state the וֹת ending is retained since the *holem-vav* is unchangeable long.

Plural absolute			Plural construct	
אָבוֹת	fathers (m)	→	אֲבוֹת	fathers of

  c. *Feminine plural construct nouns*. When a feminine plural noun is placed in the construct state the וֹת ending is retained since the *holem-vav* is unchangeable long. However, other vowel changes will occur.

Plural absolute			Plural construct	
אֲרָצוֹת	lands (f)	→	אַרְצוֹת	lands of

B. Singular Construct Nouns

1. *Vowel reduction*. The rules governing singular construct nouns are complicated and you are referred to a lexicon for identification. However, a few rules are provided in order to help you quickly identify them.[24]

   a. *Monosyllabic nouns*. Monosyllabic nouns with unchangeably long and short vowels have the same form in the singular construct as the singular absolute.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
אִישׁ	man	אִישׁ	man of	אֲנָשִׁים	men	אַנְשֵׁי	men of
יוֹם	day	יוֹם	day of	יָמִים	days	יְמֵי	days of
קוֹל (f)	voice	קוֹל	voice of	קוֹלוֹת	voices	קוֹלוֹת	voices of
בַּת (f)	daughter	בַּת	daughter of	בָּנוֹת	daughters	בְּנוֹת	daughters of
הַר	mountain	הַר	mountain of	הָרִים	mountains	הָרֵי	mountains of

   b. *Monosyllabic nouns with changeably long vowels*. Monosyllabic nouns with changeably long vowels will be shortened.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
בֵּן	son	בֶּן	son of	בָּנִים	sons	בְּנֵי	sons of
דָּם	blood	דַּם	blood of	דָּמִים	bloods	דְּמֵי	bloods of
שֵׁם	name	שֵׁם	name of	שֵׁמוֹת	names	שְׁמוֹת	names of
יָד (f)	hand	יַד	hand of	יָדוֹת	hands	יְדוֹת	hands of
				יָדַיִם	hands (dual)	יְדֵי	hands of (dual)

   c. *Monosyllabic nouns* אָב *"father" and* אָח *"brother."* Monosyllabic nouns אָב "father" and אָח "brother" are irregular in the singular construct.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
אָב	father	אֲבִי	father of	אָבוֹת	fathers	אֲבוֹת	fathers of
אָח	brother	אֲחִי	brothers	אַחִים	brothers	אֲחֵי	brothers of

   d. *Bisyllabic nouns with both syllables closed*. Bisyllabic nouns with both syllables closed will shorten the long vowel in the second syllable[25].

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
מִסְפָּר	number	מִסְפַּר	number of	מִסְפָּרִים	numbers	מִסְפְּרֵי	numbers of
מִשְׁכָּן	tabernacle	מִשְׁכַּן	tabernacle of	מִשְׁכָּנוֹת	tabernacles	מִשְׁכְּנוֹת	tabernacles of
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment	מִשְׁפַּט	judgments	מִשְׁפָּטִים	judgments	מִשְׁפְּטֵי	judgments of

---

[24] The rules can become complex so it is recommended that you are aware of the various changes but not get overwhelmed with the details. This list is adapted from Page Kelley's Biblical Hebrew Grammar.
[25] Long vowels cannot stand in closed, unaccented syllables.

e. *Bisyllabic nouns with the first syllable open and the second closed*. Bisyllabic nouns with the first syllable open and the second closed will reduce the first open syllable's vowel to a *sheva* and shorten the second syllable's vowel.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
דָּבָר	word	דְּבַר	word of	דְּבָרִים	words	דִּבְרֵי	words of
כּוֹכָב	star	כּוֹכַב	star of	כּוֹכָבִים	stars	כּוֹכְבֵי	stars of
מָקוֹם	place	מְקוֹם	place of	מְקוֹמוֹת	places	מְקוֹמוֹת	places of
נָבִיא	prophet	נְבִיא	prophet of	נְבִיאִים	prophets	נְבִיאֵי	prophets of

f. *Feminine nouns*. Feminine nouns ending in ◌ָה in the singular absolute change to ◌ַת in the singular construct.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
מַלְכָּה	queen	מַלְכַּת	queen of	מְלָכוֹת	queens	מַלְכוֹת	queens of
מִצְוָה	command	מִצְוַת	command of	מִצְוֹת	commands	מִצְוֹת	commands of
שָׁנָה	year	שְׁנַת	year of	שָׁנִים	years	שְׁנֵי	years of
תּוֹרָה	law	תּוֹרַת	law of	תּוֹרוֹת	laws	תּוֹרוֹת	laws of

g. *Segholates*. Segholate singular construct nouns have the same form as the singular absolute.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
אֶרֶץ	(f) land	אֶרֶץ	land of	אֲרָצוֹת	lands	אַרְצוֹת	lands of
דֶּרֶךְ	way	דֶּרֶךְ	way of	דְּרָכִים	ways	דַּרְכֵי	ways of
מֶלֶךְ	king	מֶלֶךְ	kings	מְלָכִים	kings	מַלְכֵי	kings of
נַעַר	lad	נַעַר	lad of	נְעָרִים	lads	נַעֲרֵי	lads of
נֶפֶשׁ	(f) soul	נֶפֶשׁ	soul of	נְפָשׁוֹת	souls	נַפְשׁוֹת	souls of
סֵפֶר	book	סֵפֶר	book of	סְפָרִים	books	סִפְרֵי	books of
עֶבֶד	servant	עֶבֶד	servant of	עֲבָדִים	servants	עַבְדֵי	servants of

h. *Nouns built with the diphthong* ◌ַיִ. Nouns built with the diphthong ◌ַיִ as in בַּיִת "house" are irregular.

Singular absolute		Singular construct		Plural absolute		Plural construct	
בַּיִת	house	בֵּית	house of	בָּתִּים	houses	בָּתֵּי	houses of
זַיִת	olive tree	זֵית	olive tree of	זֵיתִים	olive trees	זֵיתֵי	olive trees of
עַיִן	eye	עֵין	eye of	עֵינַיִם	eyes (Du.)	עֵינֵי	eyes of

3. *Definiteness*. The construct noun will never take the definite article. Definiteness of the construct chain is determined by the definiteness of the absolute noun. When the absolute noun is definite the translation is "the … of the …"

מֶלֶךְ אֶרֶץ   "A king of a land"

מֶלֶךְ הָאָרֶץ   "The king of the land"

a. When a noun is in construct relationship, definiteness is also determined by the addition of a pronominal suffix added to the absolute noun.

בֵּית מַלְכִּי   "The house of his father"

4. *Multiple construct nouns*. Multiple construct nouns can appear in a construct chain, but the chain will have only one absolute noun. In this case, each instance of the construct noun will be translated with "of" and definiteness is derived from the definiteness of the absolute noun.

Absolute state	Construct state
הַמֶּלֶךְ	עֶבֶד בֵּית

"the servant of the house of the king"

5. *Construct chains with adjectives*. Construct nouns cannot be separated by other words. When an adjective is used to modify either the construct or the absolute noun it must follow the construct chain and the adjective must agree in gender, number and definiteness with the noun it modifies.

מֶלֶךְ הָאָרֶץ הַטּוֹב	"the good king of the land"
מֶלֶךְ הָרֶץ הַטּוֹבָה	"the king of the good land"

Context must be used to determine the proper translation in construct chains where the adjective is the same in gender and number to both the construct and absolute nouns.

6. *Construct chains with demonstrative pronouns*. The demonstrative pronouns "this" and "that" can be used in a construct chain. When a demonstrative pronoun is used to modify either the construct or the absolute noun it must follow the construct chain.

דִּבְרֵי הַנָּבִיא הַזֶּה	"the words of *this prophet*"
דִּבְרֵי הַנָּבִיא הַטּוֹב הַזֶּה	"the words of *this good prophet*"
דְּבַר הַנָּבִיא הַזֶּה	"the word of *this* prophet" or "*this* word of the prophet"

7. *Construct nouns with inseparable preposition*. While the definite article cannot attach to a construct noun an inseparable preposition can and hence the definite

article with the inseparable preposition. For example בְּבֵית דָּוִד is "in the house of David."

II.   Usage of construct nouns

Dr. Kelly identifies the following construct relationships that is used to express various meanings:[26]

1.   *Possessive*. The construct has the basic meaning of possession or ownership.

דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים   "the word of God"
רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים   "the spirit of God"
שְׂדֵה נָבוֹת   "the field of Naboth"

2.   *Location or origin*. The construct can express location of origin of a person or thing.

עָרֵי יְהוּדָה   "the cities of Judah (location)"
אַנְשֵׁי יְרוּשָׁלַם   "the men of Jerusalem (origin)"

3.   *Identification*. The construct can express further description or identification of a person or thing.

יוֹם חֹשֶׁךְ   "a day of darkness (kind of day)"
סֵפֶר הַבְּרִית   "the book of the covenant (which book?)"
אֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם   "the land of Egypt (which land?)"

4.   *Source*. The construct can express the source of a thing.

דְּבַר יְהוָה   "the word of/from the Lord"

Practice
1.   Memorize the vocabulary.
2.   Translate the following:
a.   תּוֹרוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ הַטּוֹבוֹת
b.   הֵיכְלֵי הַמַּלְכָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה
c.   שְׁמוֹת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל
d.   אֵשֶׁת הָאִישׁ הָרֵע
e.   כּוֹכְבֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם

Chapter Ten

Introduction to Verbs

Vocabulary

אָכַל	to eat	עָבַד	to serve
אָמַר	to say	עָלָה	to go up
הָלַךְ	to go, walk	עָשָׂה	to do, make
הָיָה	to be, become	פָּקַד	to visit
יָצָא	to go out, come out	קָרָא	to call
יָשַׁב	to sit, dwell	רָאָה	to see
מָלַךְ	to reign	שָׁכַב	to lay down
מָצָא	to find	שָׁלַח	to send
נָפַל	to fall	שָׁמַע	to hear, obey
נָתַן	to give	שָׁמַר	to keep, guard

Introduction to Verbs

Verbs are the most important part of speech since the action or state of being is defined by the verb. All Hebrew words have a root, either a three consonant or two consonant root that forms the foundation of the noun or verb. A stem is then built from the root and serves as the basic element of all words. Drs Pratico and Van Pelt provide the following words of encouragement, "The system of deriving different words or stems from a common root should be a point of encouragement for students since it can take some of the pain out of vocabulary memorization."[27] The following examples illustrate this concept using a couple of popular words.

Noun		Verb	
מֶלֶךְ	king	מָלַךְ	to reign
דָּבָר	word	דִּבֶּר	to speak

Hebrew verbs possess a stem, tense, person, gender, and number. The following table characterizes the various stems.

---

[27] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids:Zondervan, 2001), p. 122

Type	Stem	Description	Translation
Simple	Qal	Simple active	I said
	Niphʿal	Simple passive	I was being spoken to
		Simple reflexive	I said myself
Intensive	Piʿel	Intensive active	I intensely said
	Puʿal	Intensive passive	I was being intensely spoken to
	Hithpaʿel	Intensive reflexive	I intensely said myself
Causative	Hiphʿil	Causative active	I cause to speak
	Hophʿal	Causative passive	I was being made to speak

The second aspect of the Hebrew verb is tense or inflection. The time aspect of the verb is not inherent in the verb form as is the case with some languages. Instead, the time aspect is determined by the context. However, Hebrew verbs have two possible "inflections" that express the state of the action of the verb, referred to as kind of action. They are the perfect and imperfect. Perfect verbs express a completed state of the action, while imperfect expresses the incomplete state of the action.

The following table describes the various tense inflections[28].

Inflection	Kind of action	Translation	Example
Perfect	Completed action	Past tense	In the beginning God *created* (Gen. 1:1)
Imperfect	Incomplete action	Present/future tense	And I *will make* you a great nation (Gen. 12:2)

Inflection	Kind of action	Translation	Example
Imperative	Command	Command	*Believe* in the Lord your God! (2 Chron. 20:20)
Infinitive	Verbal noun	infinitive	*To know* good and evil (Gen. 3:22)
Participle	Verbal adjective	Verbally/adjectivally	*Knowing/those that know* good and evil (Gen. 3:5)

Finally, the Hebrew verb possesses person, number, and gender. The following table summarizes these aspects.

---

[28] Most modern Hebrew grammarians do not use the word "tense" so as not to confuse the student concerning the time aspect. This grammar uses the word tense as a category simply because Gesenius uses the word to describe this characteristic – it simply is the best way to describe it.

	Number			
Person	**Singular**		**Plural**	
	1st	I	1st	we
	2nd	you	2nd	you
	3rd	he/she/it	3rd	them

Gender	Masculine	masculine subjects
	Feminine	feminine subjects
	Common	both masculine and feminine

Parsing and Translation Guidelines

To parse a verb is to identify all the individual elements that define a Hebrew verb. That is, identifying the verb's stem, conjugation, person, number, and lexical form. To parse a verb first start by identifying the prefixes and suffixes that may be present. Once they are identified, find the verb root. The verb root will be the Qal Perfect 3rd masculine singular form for bisyllabic verbs and the Qal infinitive construct in the case of monosyllabic verbs. The next step is to find the root in the lexicon and the meaning. Then the stem is identified (Qal, Niphal, Piel, etc…) and its conjugation (perfect, imperfect, imperative, etc). Finally, the gender and number can be noted and the rough translation made.

To break the verb down into its elementary parts:
1. Identify the additions
   a. Prefix
   b. Suffix
2. Remove affixes
3. Identify root letters (lexical form)
4. Translate the word.

Suffixes	**Root**	**Prefixes**
XX	**XXX**	**XX**
Verbal endings	3 - letter root	Article
Pronominal suffixes		Conjunction
		Preposition
		Stem identifer
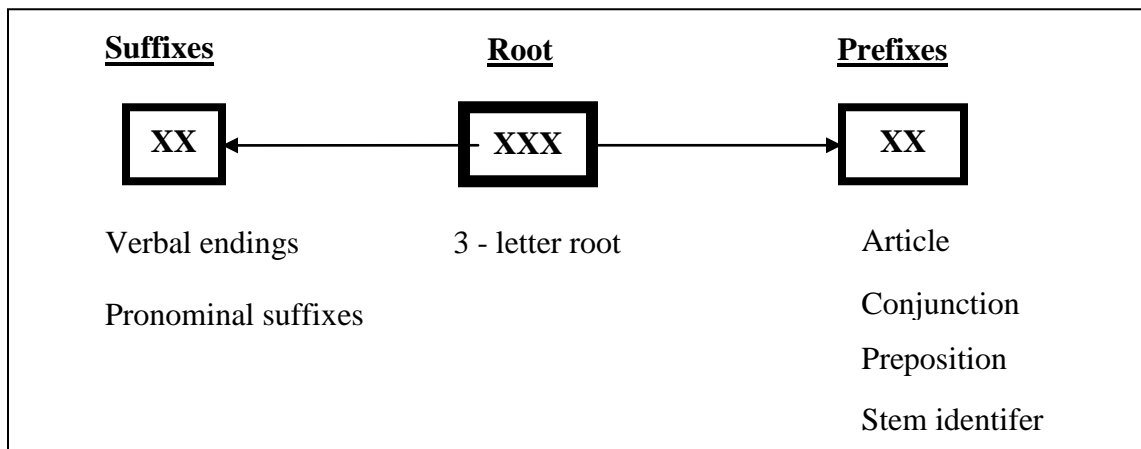
Verb Subject Agreement

The verb must agree in person, gender, and number with the subjects. For example יְהוָה זֶה־הַיּוֹם עָשָׂה "This is the day the LORD *has made*" (Ps. 118:24).

Pronominal subjects do not need to be written separately since they are inherent in the verb themselves. When subject pronouns are used in addition to the verb, it is used for emphasis. For example הוא נָתְנָה־לִּי מִן־הָעֵץ "*She gave* to me from the tree" (Gen. 3:12).

The Hebrew Verb Sentence

1. *Normal word order*. The normal word order for the Hebrew verbal sentence is first the verb, then the subject and any modifiers, and finally the object and any modifiers (*verb-subject-object*). This is illustrated as follows:

Object	Subject	Verb
אֵת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ	אֱלֹהִים	בָּרָא
"God created the heavens and the earth" (Gen. 1:1)		

(modifiers)	Object	(modifiers)	Subject	Verb
	אֵת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ		אֱלֹהִים	בָּרָא
"God created the heavens and the earth" (Gen. 1:1)				

2. *Word order used for emphasis*. Hebrew word order may vary in order to emphasize some aspect that is placed first. Notice the following examples.

יְהוָה נָתַן וַיהוָה לָקָח   The LORD (emphatic) gave, and the LORD (emphatic) has taken away. (Job 1:21)

אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ תִּירָא   Yahweh (emphatic) your God you shall fear (Deut. 10:20)

דֶּרֶךְ שָׁלוֹם לֹא יָדָעוּ   The way of peace (emphatic) they do not know. (Isa. 59:8)

Verb Classifications

Hebrew verbs are classified according to sound as either strong or weak. The result of this classification is that strong ("sounding") verbs are fairly standard while weak ("sounding") verbs are subdivided into ten groupings.

A. *Strong verbs*. A strong verb contains three strong consonants in the root form. The strong consonants are: ב, ג, ד, ז, ט, כ, ל, מ, נ (middle consonant), ס, פ, צ, ק, ר (final consonant), שׂ, שׁ, ת.
B. *Weak verbs*. A verb is weak if it contains one of the following:
  1. It contains one or more guttural consonant א, ה, ח, ע, and sometimes ר.
  2. It begins with י, ו, or נ.
  3. Its second and third consonants are identical (Geminate).
  4. It is a middle vowel verb or a two consonant root (biconsonantal) verb.

Dr. Kelley writes, "Early grammarians named the various classes of weak verbs on the basis of a paradigm verb chosen for this purpose [of classification]. They might have chosen any triliteral verb as a basis for the names, but the one they favored was פָּעַל, translated 'he did, made.' Weak verbs were organized into separate classes on the basis of how their weak consonants were positioned in relation to the three consonants of the paradigm verb. Thus a verb with an initial guttural was called a Pe guttural; one with a middle guttural, an 'Ayin guttural; one with a final guttural, a Lamed guttural, etc. Many modern grammarians prefer to designate these simply as I-guttural, II-guttural, etc."[29]

	III	II	I	← Modern designation	Modern	Description
	ל	עַ	פֶ	← Traditional		
1	ד	מַ	עֲ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שָׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לְ	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נְ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פַ	נַ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	וֹ	שׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שַׁ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	בַ	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	

Practice
  1. Memorize the vocabulary.
  2. Classify the following as strong or weak:
     a. הָלַךְ
     b. גָּנַב
     c. אָהַב
     d. יָדַע

---

[29] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 81

Chapter Eleven

Qal Perfect Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אַךְ	only, surely	חָזַק	to be strong
אַל	no, not[30]	יָדַע	to know
אִם	if, then	כָּבֵד	to be heavy
בּוֹא	to come, go	כָּתַב	to write
בָּנָה	to build	לֹא	no, not
בָּרַךְ	to bless	לָקַח	to take
גָּנַב	to steal	מָלֵא	to be full, fulfill
זָכַר	to remember	עָמַד	to stand
זָקֵן	to be old	שַׁבָּת	Sabbath, rest
חָיָה	to live	שָׁבַת	to cease, rest

Qal Perfect

The Qal perfect is the simplest verb form and is the form listed in the lexicon.[31] The word Qal (קַל) means "he (it) was light" i.e., "not heavy" and designates the simple active verb stem.[32]

The Qal perfect 3rd masc. sg., normally contains three consonants with two vowels. The first syllable is open and always has Qamets as its vowel. The accent falls on the second syllable and is closed except when ending with א or ה. When closed, it has Patach as its vowel. When open, the syllable is lengthened to Qamets.

Qal Perfect			
Closed Syllable		**Open Syllable**	
אָכַל	He ate	הָיָה	He was
אָמַר	He said	נָשָׂא	He lifted up
יָשַׁב	He sat	עָשָׂה	He did, made

---

[30] אַל is neg. for request, prohibition (certainly not); whereas, לֹא is used for ordinary declarative negation.

[31] Specifically, the Qal Perfect 3 masculine singular is the lexical form.

[32] Page Kelley, p. 80

Qal Perfect Inflection

The Qal Perfect inflection for strong verbs has the following suffix forms:

Qal Perfect Suffixes					
Singular			**Plural**		
3ms	none	he	3cp	וּ	they
3fs	ָה	she			
2ms	ָתָ	you	2mp	תֶּם	you
2fs	תְּ	you	2fp	תֶּן	you
1cs[33]	תִּי	I	1cp	נוּ	we

To form the Qal perfect word, first identify the root (it is the Qal perfect, 3ms), then add the pronominal suffix ending. The various inflections for the verb שָׁמַר "he kept" is given below.

שָׁמַר "to keep"					
3ms	שָׁמַר	he kept	3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	they kept
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	she kept			
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	you kept	2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	you kept
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	you kept	2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	you kept
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	I kept	1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	we kept

The same perfect suffixes are used for all stems of all verbs, both strong and weak. Memorize these inflections will go a long way to mastering Hebrew verbs.

Qal Perfect Usage

The Qal perfect inflection expresses the kind of action as completed or a state of being. There are various ways the Hebrew perfect may be translated. Context must be examined to determine the kind of action or the state of being represented by the verb.

1. *Simple past tense.* The perfect can be translated as simple action completed in past time.   For example בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים   "In the beginning God *created.*" (Gen. 1:1)
2. *Past perfect.* The perfect can be translated as action completed prior to a point of reference in past time known as the English past perfect "he had …". An example is וַיהוָה פָּקַד אֶת־שָׂרָה כַּאֲשֶׁר אָמָר "And the LORD *visited* Sarah as *he had said.*" (Gen. 21:1)

---

[33] "c" indicates "common," meaning both masculine & feminine

3. *Present tense*. The perfect can be translated as a present tense when the verb is one of perception, attitude, disposition, or a mental or physical state of being. For example, וְדֶרֶךְ שָׁלוֹם לֹא יָדָעוּ "And the way of peace *they do not know*." (Isa. 59:8)

4. *Future tense*. The perfect can be translated as a future when prefixed with the vav conjunction. For example וְשָׁכַבְתִּי עִם־אֲבֹתַי "And *I will lie down* with my ancestors." (Gen. 47:30)

5. *Prophetic perfect*. In prophecy one finds when the Lord speaks about things He will do in the future, He speaks in the perfect tense. An example is, וַהֲקִמֹתִי אֶת־בְּרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וּבֵין זַרְעֲךָ אַחֲרֶיךָ לְדֹרֹתָם לִבְרִית עוֹלָם "I **will establish** My covenant between Me and your seed after you in their generations, for an everlasting covenant." (Gen. 17:7a)

Vocalization Changes

There are several changes that take place when adding the perfect suffixes. Starting from the Qal perfect third masculine singular form the rules for adding the perfect suffixes are as follows:

1. *Two categories of suffixes*. There are two categories, those that begin with a vowel and those that begin with a consonant.

   a. If the suffix is vocalic (a vowel, i.e., the suffixes הָ or וּ) and is proceeded by an unchangeably long vowel (Qamets He (הָ), Tsere Yod (ֵי), Seghol Yod (ֶי), Hireq Yod (ִי), Holem Waw (וֹ), Shureq (וּ)), the nearest preceding vowel is reduced to a vocal sheva. If a long vowel stands immediately before the vocal sheva, the long vowel must be marked with a secondary accent called a metag. Dr. Kelley summarizes this process, "when the vocalic suffix הָ is added to שָׁמַר , 'he kept,' the resultant form is שָׁמְרָה . Since ר has been pulled away from the preceding syllable to begin a new syllable, the preceding syllable has changed from a closed syllable (מַר) to an open syllable (מָ). Since the accent is on the new syllable (רָה), the vowel in the nearest preceding open syllable (מָ) must volatilize (מָ becomes מְ). And since the vowel immediately preceding the vocal sheva is long, it must receive a meteg. The resultant form for Qal perfect, third feminine singular is שָׁמְרָה , 'she kept.' By the same process the resultant form for Qal perfect, third common plural is שָׁמְרוּ , 'they kept.'"[34]

   b. Suffixes that begin with a consonant must have a silent sheva placed under the third consonant. The silent shava functions as a syllable divider. For example, when the consonantal suffix תָ (2 ms) is added to שָׁמַר, it becomes שָׁמַרְתָּ.

2. *Verbs ending with ת*. When the verbal root ending is ת and the suffix also begins with a ת, the consonant ת is doubled using the Daghesh Forte (תּ). For example כָּרַת changes to כָּרַתָּ "you cut" (2ms).

3. *Verbs ending with נ*. When the verbal root ending is נ and the suffix also begins with a נ, the consonant ending with נ is doubled using the Daghesh Forte (נּ). For example, שָׁכַן changes to שָׁכַנּוּ "we dwell" (1cp). Drs. Pratico & Van Pelt also point out another important doubling when the verbal root ending is a nun (נ), and the sufformatives begin with ת (i.e., נת), ת is doubled (תּ). For example, the 1cs form of

---

[34] Page Kelley, p. 84

the verb נָתַן "to give" is נָתַתִּי. "The final of the verbal root has assimilated into the of the sufformative and its presence is represented by the Daghesh Forte."[35]

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary.

    II. Parse the following perfect verbs (e.g.   Qal Perf. 1cs)

        1. הָיְתָה

        2. יָדַעְתִּי

        3. זָכַרְתִּי

        4. מָלְאָה

        5. יָדַעְנוּ

        6. זָכַרְתִּי

        7. כְּתַבְתָּם

        8. עָמַדְתִּי

        9. שָׁבְתוּ

    III. Translate the following:

1. (Deut. 8:6) וְשָׁמַרְתָּ אֶת־מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לָלֶכֶת (go) בִּדְרָכָיו וּלְיִרְאָה (fear) אֹתוֹ

2. (Gen. 34:28) וְאֶת־אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׂדֶה לָקָחוּ

3. (Zech. 8:23) כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת בַּיָּמִים הָהֵמָּה אֲשֶׁר יַחֲזִיקוּ(be strong)

4. (Ps. 78:10) לֹא שָׁמְרוּ בְּרִית אֱלֹהִים וּבְתוֹרָתוֹ מֵאֲנוּ(they refused) לָלֶכֶת(to go)

5. (Gen. 4:1) וְהָאָדָם יָדַע אֶת־חַוָּה אִשְׁתּוֹ וַתַּהַר(she conceived) וַתֵּלֶד (I bear) אֶת־קַיִן וַתֹּאמֶר קָנִיתִי (I buy) אִישׁ אֶת־יְהוָה

---

[35] Gary Pratico, Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2001), p. 142

Chapter Twelve

Qal Imperfect Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אֹזֶן	ear (f)	עוֹלָם	eternity, for ever
אַיִל	ram	עָנָה	to answer (v)
גִּבּוֹר	mighty (adj)	קוּם	to arise (v)
זֶבַח	sacrifice	שָׂפָה	lip, speech, edge (f)
יָכֹל	to be able, capable (v)	שָׁאַל	to ask (v)
כָּרַת	to cut off, make a covenant (v)	שָׁבַר	to break in pieces (v)
מָשַׁל	to rule (v)	שׁוּב	to turn, return (v)
סוּר	to turn aside (v)	שָׁכַח	to forget (v)
עָבַד	to work, serve (v)	שָׁפַט	to judge, deliver (v)
עָבַר	to pass over, through (v)	תְּפִלָּה	prayer (f)

Qal Imperfect Tense

The Qal imperfect expresses action that is simple and incomplete whether in the past, present or future. The Qal imperfect is normally translated as the English present or future tense. The imperfect gets its time of action from the context. The imperfect may also be translated modally as "would, could, should, may, might."

Imperfect Tense Inflection
The imperfect conjugation has the following forms.

Qal Imperfect Inflection					
Singular			**Plural**		
3ms	יׄ□□□	he	3cp	יׄ□□□וּ	they
3fs	תׄ□□□	she	3fp	תׄ□□□נָה	they
2ms	תׄ□□□	you	2mp	תׄ□□□וּ	you
2fs	תׄ□□□יִ	you	2fp	תׄ□□□נָה	you
1cs[36]	אׄ□□□	I	1cp	נׄ□□□	we

---

[36] "c" indicates "common," meaning both masculine & feminine

שָׁמַר "he kept"				
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	he will keep	3cp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	they will keep
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	she will keep	3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	they will keep
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	you will keep	2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	you will keep
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	you will keep	2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	you will keep
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	I will keep	1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	we will keep

Qal Imperfect Usage

The Qal imperfect inflection expresses the kind of action as incomplete or an incomplete state of being. There are various ways the Hebrew imperfect may be translated. Context must be examined as to the kind of action or the state of being represented by the verb.

1. *Simple action in future time.* וְאֶת־רוּחִי אֶתֵּן בְּקִרְבְּכֶם "And **I will put** My Spirit within you" (Ezek. 36:27a)

2. *Repetitive, habitual, or customary actions in the past, present, or future.*
   a. *In the past.* וְאֵד יַעֲלֶה מִן־הָאָרֶץ "And a mist **went up** from the earth" (Gen. 2:6)
   b. *In the present.* יִשְׁמָע וּתְפִלַּת צַדִּיקִים "But the prayer of the righteous **he hears**" (Prov. 15:29).
   c. *In the future.* יִזְכֹּר לְעוֹלָם בְּרִיתוֹ "**He will remember** his covenant forever." (Ps. 111:5)

3. *Modal expressions.* Modal expressions "would, could, should, may, might," are meant when the imperfect is used in conjunction with other words.
   a. When used with conditional particles אִם, "if," and אוּלַי "perhaps." בֵּית יְהוּדָה אוּלַי יִשְׁמְעוּ "Perhaps the house of Judah will hear." (Jer. 36:3)
   b. When used with particles expressing end or purpose such as לְמַעַן "in order that," כִּי "for, because," אֲשֶׁר "that," and פֶּן "lest." פֶּן־תִּשְׁכַּח אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ "lest you forget the LORD your God." (Deut. 6:12)
   c. When used after the interrogatives אֵיךְ "how," מָה "what," מִי "who," and לָמָה "why." מִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁמַע בְּקֹלוֹ "Who is the LORD that I should listen to his voice? (Ex. 5:2)

Volitional usage

The imperfect can be used to express volition in the first person (Cohortative) and the third person (Jussive).

Number	Name	
1st	Cohortive	I, we
2nd	Imperative	You
3rd	Jussive	He, they

1. *Jussive.* The word jussive comes from the Latin *iussū* meaning "by order, by command." The jussive expresses the speaker's desire, wish, or command, and is

translated using "may" or "let." The jussive occurs with the third person imperfect.

a. Simple jussive.
   i. Translated "let." אַל־יִמְשְׁלוּ־בִי "Let them not have dominion over me." (Ps. 19:14)
   ii. Translated "may." יִשְׁפֹּט יְהוָה בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶיךָ "May the LORD judge between me and between you." (Gen. 16:5)

b. Used with the particle of entreaty נָא "I pray." יִזְכָּר־נָא הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ "Pray that the king remember the LORD your God." (2 Sam. 14:11).

2. *Cohortative*. A first person exhortation to oneself or to a group. The word cohortative comes from the Latin *cŏhaerĕo*, meaning, "to hold together, hang together," The cohortative expresses the speaker's "desire, intention, self-encouragement, or determination to perform a certain action."[37]

   a. Simple cohortative. Translated "let." וְעַתָּה נִכְרָת־בְּרִית לֵאלֹהֵינוּ "And now, let us make a covenant with our God." (Ezra. 10:3)

   b. Used with the vocalic suffix ָה. וְאֶכְרְתָה לָכֶם בְּרִית עוֹלָם "And I will make for you an everlasting covenant." (Isa. 55:3)

3. *Imperative*. The second person command. The word imperative comes from the Latin *impĕrāre,* meaning, "to impose, to command." The imperative expresses direct commands, requests, or permission.

Vav Consecutive with the Imperfect

When the author wants to convey consecutive events in past time, the phrase will begin with the perfect followed by a series of vav consecutives attached to the imperfect. This construction is referred to as the vav conversive. The vav consecutive is normally attached to the imperfect using the patach, plus the dagesh forte in the following consonant (וַּ). With the addition of the vav consecutive the rules for its pointing will be similar to the definite article.

	Qal Impf	Qal Impf				Qal Perf	
אֶת־קַיִן	וַתֵּלֶד	וַתַּהַר	אִשְׁתּוֹ	אֶת־חַוָּה	יָדַע	וְהָאָדָם

"And Adam knew Eve his wife, and she conceived, and she bore Cain (Gen. 4:1)

Practice

I. Memorize the vocabulary.

II. Complete the Qal imperfect for the following and translate:

1. 3 ms כתב   3 mp כתב
2. 3 fs כתב   3 fpl כתב
3. 2 ms כתב   2 mp כתב
4. 2 fs כתב   2 fp כתב

---

[37] Kelley, p. 132

5.   1 cs   כתב   1 cp   כתב

III. Translate the following:

1.   וְחַטֹּאתֶיךָ לֹא אֶזְכֹּר   (Isa. 43:25)

2.   וְהוּא יִשְׁפֹּט־תֵּבֵל בְּצֶדֶק   (Ps. 9:9)

3.   כִּי זֹאת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אֶכְרֹת אֶת־בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל   (Jer. 31:33)

4.   אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁכָּן־שָׁם בְּתוֹךְ בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל לְעוֹלָם   (Ezek. 43:7)

Qal Imperative & Pronominal Suffixes of Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אָחַז	to seize	לָבֵשׁ	to put on, clothe
בָּחַר	to choose	נָגַע	to touch, reach
בָּטַח	to trust	נוּס	to flee
בִּין	to understand	סָבַב	to turn around, surround
בָּכָה	to weep	סָפַר	to write, number
דָּרַשׁ	to seek	קָדַשׁ	to be holy
חָפֵץ	to please, delight	רָעָה	to feed, graze, tend flocks
הָרַג	to kill	שָׂמַח	to rejoice
טָמֵא	to be unclean	שָׁלֵם	to be whole, complete
יָצַר	to form, shape, fashion	שָׂרַף	to burn

Qal Imperative

The word imperative comes from the Latin *impĕrāre,* meaning, "to impose, to command." The Hebrew Qal imperative only occurs in the second person singular and plural and expresses a command, wish, or desire.

Imperative Tense Inflection

The imperative conjugation is derived from a shortened form of the imperfect. The shortening drops the performative (consonant and vowel) from the imperfect form. However, according to the rule of the *sheva*: two vocal *shevas* can never stand together at the beginning of a word, the first *sheva* is changed to a *hireq* (see 2fs & 2mp).

Qal Imperative Inflection					
Singular			**Plural**		
2ms		you	2mp	□□□וּ	you
2fs	□□□ִי	you	2fp	□□□ְנָה	you

	שָׁמַר "he kept"				
	Imperfect			Imperative	
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר		→	שְׁמֹר	(you) keep!
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	שִׁמְרִי	→	שִׁמְרִי	(you) keep!
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	שִׁמְרוּ	→	שִׁמְרוּ	(you) keep!
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה		→	שְׁמֹרְנָה	(you) keep!

Qal Imperative Usage

The Qal imperative inflection expresses a direct command, wish or desire, where immediate action is expected. However, as Dr. Ross clairfies, "the imperative may express advice, counsel, invitation, or request (as in prayers)."[38] When translating the imperative one can include the second person pronoun (you) or leave it off. For example: שְׁמֹר is translated "observe!" or "you observe!" The Qal imperative is the most frequent volitional conjugation in the Hebrew Bible occurring 2,896 times, and 68% of all imperatives![39]

1. *Negation of the Imperative.* Hebrew does not negate an imperative form. Negation occurs in the jussive and cohortive only.
2. *Entreaty.* The imperative is used to express entreaty when attached with the particle of entreaty (נָא) and translated "I pray," or "please." An example is:
שִׁפְטוּ־נָא בֵּינִי וּבֵין כַּרְמִי   "**Judge, I pray**, between me and my vineyard! (Isaiah 5:3)
3. *Imperatives with הָ suffix.* At times the suffix הָ is attached to the imperative. The use of the attached suffix makes the imperative more emphatic. For example:
קוּמָה אֱלֹהִים שָׁפְטָה הָאָרֶץ   "**Riseup** O God, **judge** the earth!" (Ps. 82:8)

Pronominal Suffixes with Verbs

A pronominal suffix can be placed on verbs. In the case where the pronominal suffix is placed on the verb it serves as the object. The form of the pronominal suffix is as follows:

---

[38] Allen Ross, *Introducing Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Baker, 2001), p. 150
[39] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2001), p. 206

	Suffix	Alternate Suffix	Objective Translation		Suffix	Alternate Suffix	Objective Translation
1 cs	יִ	נִי	me	1 cp	נוּ		us
2 ms[40]	ךָ		you	2 mp	כֶם		you
2 fs[41]	ךְ		you	2 fp	כֶן		you
3 ms	וֹ	הוּ	him	3 mp	הֶם	ם	them
3 fs	הָ	הָ	her	3 fp	הֶן	ן	them

Spelling changes as a result of the addition of the pronominal suffix

Changes in spelling depends on whether the suffix is placed next to a consonant or a vowel. The following list is a partial list of changes that take place with both the verb and the pronominal suffix. The changes that occur are too numerious for the beginning student. The beginning student should memorize the final form.

		A. To form ending in a vowel	B. To form in the Perf. ending in a consnant	C.[42] To form in the Impf. ending in a consonant	
Sing.	1c	נִי	נִי (in pause נִי)	נִי	me
	2m	ךָ	ךָ (in pause ךָ or ךְ)	ךָ (in pause ךָ or ךְ)	you
	2f	ךְ	ךְ, הָ	ךְ	you
	3m	וֹ , הוּ	וֹ , הוּ	הוּ	him
	3f	הָ	הָ	הָ	her
Plur.	1c	נוּ	נוּ	נוּ	us
	2m	כֶם	כֶם	כֶם	you
	2f				
	3m	ם , הֶם	ם (from הֶם), ם	ם (from הֶם)	them
	poet.	מוֹ	מוֹ	מוֹ	them
	3f	ן	ן, ן		them

Pronominal Suffixes added to שָׁמְרוּ "they kept"							
	Suffix	שָׁמְרוּ	Objective Translation		Suffix	שָׁמְרוּ	Objective Translation
1 cs	יִ	שְׁמָרוּנִי	They kept me	1 cp	נוּ	שְׁמָרוּנוּ	They kept us
2 ms	ךָ	שְׁמָרוּךָ	They kept you	2 mp	כֶם	שְׁמָרוּכֶם	They kept you
2 fs	ךְ	שְׁמָרוּךְ	They kept you	2 fp	כֶן	שְׁמָרוּכֶן	They kept you
3 ms	וֹ	שְׁמָרוּהוּ	They kept him	3 mp	הֶם	שְׁמָרוּם	They kept them
3 fs	הָ	שְׁמָרוּהָ	They kept her	3 fp	הֶן	שְׁמָרוּן	They kept them

---

[40] Final kaf ךְ will have its final qamets (ָ) placed inside the letter and looks like ךָ .
[41] Final kaf ךְ is written with a silent sheva (ְ) when it lacks a vowel and looks like ךְ.
[42] Table adapted from Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary.

   II. Memorize the Qal Imperative form

  III. Translate the following:

      1. שְׁמַע יִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ יְהוָה אֶחָד (Deut. 6:4)

      2. לֵב טָהוֹר בְּרָא־לִי אֱלֹהִים (Ps. 51:12)

      3. שָׁפְטֵנִי יְהוָה (Ps. 7:9)

      4. יְהוָה זָכְרֵנִי וּפָקְדֵנִי (Jer. 15:15)

Chapter Fourteen

Qal Infinitive Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אָבַד	to perish	כָּלָה	to complete, finish
אָסַף	to gather	מָאַס	to reject, despise
בָּרַח	to flee	מָכַר	to sell
חָדַל	to cease	נָטָה	to stretch out, extend
חָטָא	to sin	פַּר	young bull (m)
יָלַד	to beget	רֹב	multitude
יָסַף	to add	רוּם	to be high, exalted
יָרַד	to go down	רָפָא	to heal
יָרַשׁ	to possess, subdue	שָׂנֵא	to hate
כוּן	to be fixed, firm, establish	שָׁתָה	to drink

Qal Infinitive

Infinitives are "infinite" in the sense that they express the basic idea of the verbial root without the limitations of person, number, and gender. Indeed, infinitives do not possess person, gender or number. Perfect, imperfect, and imperative verbs on the other hand, are limited to a specific person, gender, and number. For this reason they are known as "finite" verbs.[43]

Hebrew has two infinitive forms: the infinitive construct and the infinitive absolute. Infinitives are verbal nouns and as such they may function verbally as for example בּוֹא has the basic verbal meaning "to go." Likewise, as a noun, the infinitive may function as a gerund as for example, "going." In the gerundial usage, the infinitive absolute sometimes is modified with prepositional prefixes and pronominial suffixes.

Qal Infinitive Form

The Qal infinitive form is simple in that only one form needs to be memorized. The infinitive is not inflected for person, gender or number. The complication comes in that the Qal infinitive construct has the same form as the Qal imperative 2ms. Context must be used to translate.

---

[43] Kelly, p. 179

Qal Infinitive Strong Verb					
	Qal Perfect	**Infinitive pointing**		**Qal Infinitive**	
Construct	שָׁמַר	קְטֹל	→	שְׁמֹר	**"to keep"**
Absolute		קָטוֹל	→	שָׁמוֹר	

Qal Infinitive Construct

The infinitive construct can function is the following ways.

1. *Normal infinitive*. The infinitive construct can function much like the English infinitive. For example,

   לֹא־טוֹב הֱיוֹת הָאָדָם לְבַדּוֹ   "It is not good for man **to be** alone." (Gen. 2:18)

2. *With a prepositional prefix*. The infinitive construct is often used with an attached prepositional prefix. The most frequent preposition is לְ , though, בְּ , and כְּ are also common.

   a. *Lemed prefix* . When the infinitive construct is prefixed with לְ the meaning is to introduce a purpose, result, or temporal clause. This is by far the most frequently used form. An example is

   וְעֵת לִדְרוֹשׁ אֶת־יְהוָה   "And it is time **to seek** the LORD" (Hos. 10:12)

   b. *Bet prefix*. When the infinitive construct is prefixed with בְּ the meaning is to introduce a temporal (when an action took place), causal (why an action took place) clause. An example is

   וַיְהִי בִּהְיוֹת יְהוֹשֻׁעַ בִּירִיחוֹ   "**while/when** Joshua **was** in Jericho" (Josh. 5:13)

   c. *Kef prefix*. When the infinitive construct is prefixed with כְּ the meaning is to introduce a temporal clause and translated with "when, as, just as." An example is

   וְהָיָה כִּשְׁכַב אֲדֹנִי־הַמֶּלֶךְ עִם־אֲבֹתָיו   "**when** my lord the king **lies down** with his ancestors" (1 Kings 1:21)

   d. *Prefixed with מִן*. The infinitive construct is prefixed with the preposition מִן after verbs of withholding, restraining, or refusing to grant privilege. It may also be used to express a comparative, or simply mean "from." An example is

   גָּדוֹל עֲוֹנִי מִנְּשֹׂא   "My punishment [is] **too** great **to bear**." (Gen. 4:13).

3. *With a pronominal suffix*. When the infinitive construct is used with a pronominal suffix, the suffix is either the subject (קָטְלוֹ "his killing") or the object (קָטְלוֹ "kill him") of the infinitive.

   a. *As a subject*. For example,

   בְּזָכְרֵנוּ אֶת־צִיּוֹן   "**when we remember** Zion" (Ps. 137:1)

   b. *As an object*. For example

   מֶלֶךְ לְשָׁפְטֵנוּ כְּכָל־הַגּוֹיִם   "a king **to rule us**, like all the nations" (1 Sam. 8:5)

4. *With a negative*. The infinitive construct is not negated using לֹא or אַל. To negate the infinitive construct, Hebrew uses בִּלְתִּי "not, in order not," or לְבִלְתִּי "so as not, in order not." An example is

   הִפְגִּעוּ בַמֶּלֶךְ לְבִלְתִּי שְׂרֹף אֶת־הַמְּגִלָּה   "implore the king **not to burn** the scroll" (Jer. 36:25)

Qal Infinitive Absolute

Infinitive absolutes are never augmented with a prepositional prefix or pronominal suffix. As such, the infinitive absolute primarily functions adverbially (though other usages may be identified).

1. *Gerund*. The infinitive absolute can be used as an "-ing" word. For example,
   אָכֹל בָּשָׂר וְשָׁתוֹת יַיִן "**eating** meat and **drinking** wine" (Isa. 22:13)

2. *Emphatic*. The infinitive absolute can be used to emphasize the verbal meaning when placed *before* the verb, thus stressing and intensifying the verb. For example,
   זָכֹר תִּזְכֹּר אֵת אֲשֶׁר־עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ "**You shall** *surely* **remember** what the LORD your God did." (Deut. 7:19)

3. *Emphatic of duration*. The infinitive absolute can be used to emphasize the duration or continuation of the verbal meaning when placed *after* the verb. For example,
   שִׁמְעוּ שָׁמוֹעַ וְאַל־תָּבִינוּ וּרְאוּ רָאוֹ וְאַל־תֵּדָעוּ "**Keep on hearing**, but do not understand; **keep on seeing**, but do not perceive." (Isa. 6:9).

4. *Imperative*. The infinitive absolute can be used to express a command. For example,
   זָכוֹר אֶת־יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת לְקַדְּשׁוֹ "Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy." (Ex. 20:8)

Practice

I. Memorize the vocabulary.
II. Translate the following:
1. אִם־מָשׁוֹל תִּמְשֹׁל בָּנוּ (Gen. 37:8)
2. וְאָזְנַיִם לִשְׁמֹעַ עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה וְלֹא־נָתַן יְהוָה לָכֶם לֵב לָדַעַת וְעֵינַיִם לִרְאוֹת (Deut. 29:3 [29:4])
3. רָאוֹת רַבּוֹת וְלֹא תִשְׁמֹר פָּקוֹחַ אָזְנַיִם וְלֹא יִשְׁמָע (Isa. 42:20)
4. כִּי בְּיוֹם אֲכָלְךָ מִמֶּנּוּ מוֹת תָּמוּת (Gen. 2:17)

Chapter Fifteen

Qal Participle Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אָרַר	to curse	נָגַשׁ	to approach
בּוֹשׁ	to be ashamed	נָהָר	river (m)
גּוֹאֵל	redeemer	סוֹפֵר	scribe (m)
גָּלָה	to uncover, reveal	פָּדָה	to ransom, redeem
חָשַׁב	to think	פָּשַׁע	to rebel, transgress
יוֹשֵׁב	inhabitant	קָבַר	to bury
יוֹצֵר	potter	רוֹאֶה	seer, prophet
יָצַר	to form	רוֹעֶה	shepherd
מוֹשִׁיעַ	savior, deliverer	שׁוֹפֵט	judge
מַלְאָךְ	angel, messenger	שָׁקָח	to water

Qal Participle
Participles are verbs that can function as nouns and are most nearly related to adjectives[44]. As such, participles have characteristics of a verb as well as an adjective. As a verb, the participle possesses tense and voice. As an adjective, the participle possesses gender and number. The word participle comes from the Latin, *particeps* meaning, "sharing," or "participating," as it is used to describe participation in the action or state of the verb.

The Hebrew participle possesses the verbal characteristic of voice as it occurs in the active and passive voice.
- a. *Active voice*. The active participle indicates a person or thing as being in the continual uninterrupted exercise of an activity.
- b. *Passive voice*. The passive participle indicates the person or thing is in a state that has been brought about by external actions.

Qal Active Participle Form
The Qal active participle masculine singular for strong verbs is formed by adding the *holem* (or *holem vav*) in the first syllable, and the *sere* in the second syllable.

---

[44] Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar, p. 356

Qal Active Participle					
Qal Perfect 3m. sg			**Qal Active Participle m.sg**		
שָׁמַר	◌ֹ◌ֵ◌	→	שֹׁמֵר	"Keeping"	

In addition to the basic verbal form, participles must congagate the adjective part as follows:

Qal Active Participle Masculine					
Singular	שֹׁמֵר	+		→	שֹׁמֵר	"guarding [him]"
Plural		+	◌ִים	→	שֹׁמְרִים	"guarding [them]"

Qal Active Participle Feminine					
Singular	שֹׁמֵר	+	◌ָה	→	שֹׁמְרָה	"guarding [her]"
Plural		+	וֹת	→	שֹׁמְרוֹת	"guarding [them]"

Qal Passive Participle Form

The Qal passive participle masculine singular for strong verbs is formed by adding the *qames* in the first syllable and the *sureq* in the second syllable.

Qal Passive Participle					
Qal Perfect 3ms			**Qal Passive Participle**		
שָׁמַר	◌ָ◌וֹ◌	→	שָׁמוּר	"being kept"	

In addition to the basic verbal form, participles must congagate the adjective part as follows:

Qal Passive Participle Masculine					
Singular	שָׁמוּר	+		→	שָׁמוּר	"[him] being guarded"
Plural		+	◌ִים	→	שְׁמוּרִים	"[them] being guarded"

Qal Passive Participle Feminine					
Singular	שָׁמוּר	+	◌ָה	→	שְׁמוּרָה	"[her] being guarded"
Plural		+	וֹת	→	שְׁמוּרוֹת	"[them] being guarded"

Usage of the Participle

Both active and passive participles may function as verbs, adjectives, or nouns.

2. *Adjective*. As an adjective the participle may function attributively or predicatively.

   a. *Attributive usage*. When the participle is used attributively, it normally follows the noun and agrees in number, gender, and definiteness. Definiteness refers to the presence of the definite article present with both noun and participle. In this case the participle is acting as a relative clause requiring the addition of the pronoun "who, which," or "that." The attributive position is of the form, הָעָם הַיּשֵׁב בָּאָרֶץ "the people *who are dwelling* in the land" (Num. 13:28).

   b. *Predicative usage*. A participle used predicatively may be placed before or after the noun it modifies and agrees in number, gender, but not definiteness. The participle never takes the definite article when used predicatively. When the participle is used predicatively, supply the "to be" verb. The predicative usage is of the form, הָהָר בֹּעֵר בָּאֵשׁ "the mountain *was* burning with fire" (Deut. 4:11).

3. *Verbs*. When participles are used as verbs normally they are preceeded by an expressed subject that agree in gender and number, but they do not take the definite article. Since participles are timeless, time must be determined by the context. For example, הַשָּׁמַיִם מְסַפְּרִים כְּבוֹד־אֵל "The heavens declare the glory of God (Ps. 19:2; Eng. 19:1)

4. *Nouns*. A participle may be used as a noun. When a participle is used as a noun it indicated the "one who," or the "ones who" are performing the action, state, or condition. When the participle is used as a noun it functions in every way as a noun, functioning as either an object or subject, and serve in apposition to other nouns. Dr. Kelley writes, "verbal nouns that describe a person's major or vocationally identifying activity. They include such forms as גֹּאֵל , "redeemer," יֹשֵׁב , "inhabitant," יֹצֵר , "potter," מוֹשִׁיעַ , "savior, deliverer," סוֹפֵר , "scribe," רֹאֶה , "seer," רֹעֶה , "shepherd," and שׁוֹפֵט , "judge."[45]

   a. Participles used as nouns in the absolute state. When a participle is used as a noun it may function in the asbolue or construct state.   An example is, וְהָלְכוּ שָׁם גְּאוּלִים "And the redeemed shall go (walk) there." (Isa. 19:17)

   b. Participles in the construct state. An example is, הֲשֹׁמֵר אָחִי אָנֹכִי "Am I the keeper of my brother?" (Gen. 4:9)

Participles with Prefixes and Suffixes
Participle can take prefixes such as the definite article and prepositional prefixes. They may also take pronominal suffixes.

1. *Definite article*. An example of a participle with the definite article is found in, מִי־הָאִישׁ הַלָּזֶה *הַהֹלֵךְ* בַּשָּׂדֶה לִקְרָאתֵנוּ "who [is] the man, this one, the one that walks in the field to meet us?" (Gen. 24:65).

---

[45] Page Kelley, p. 201

2. *Pronominal suffix.* An example of a participle with a pronominal suffix attached is found in, כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה רֹפְאֶךָ "for I am the LORD who heals you" (Ex. 15:26).

Practice
I. Memorize the vocabulary.
II. Translate the following:
1. בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה בְּנִי דָוִד (1 Sam. 26:25)
2. וְקָרְאוּ לָהֶם עַם־הַקֹּדֶשׁ גְּאוּלֵי יְהוָה (Isa. 62:12)
3. כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֹהֵב מִשְׁפָּט (Isa. 61:8)
4. וְהָהָר בֹּעֵר בָּאֵשׁ (Deu. 4:11)

Chapter Sixteen

Niphʿal Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

גָּאַל	to redeem	נַחַל	a valley, wadi (m)
גָּדַל	to be great	עָזַב	to abandon, leave, forsake
דֶּשֶׁא	grass (m)	עָזַר	to help
זָבַח	to sacrifice	פָּרָה	to be fruitful
הָלַל	to praise	קָרַב	to draw near, approach
חַטָּאת	sin (f)	רָבָה	to be many, multiply
יָצָא	to go out	רָדַף	to pursue, persecute
יָרֵא	to fear	שִׂים	to put, place
לָמַד	to learn	שֵׁבֶט	rod, staff, scepter, tribe (m)
מוּת	to die	שָׁכַן	to settle, dwell

Niphʿal

While the Qal verb stem expresses the Hebrew simple active voice, the Niphʿal (נִפְעַל) verb stem is used to express the simple passive or reflexive voice. Drs. Waltke and O'Connor write, "The Qal example represents the subject as the agent, implicitly answering the question 'What is God doing?' The Niphal by contrast answers the question 'What happened to the ground?' It does not represent the subject as the actor or agent. It rather represents the subject as having been acted upon by an unstated agent; the subject is merely participating in the action."[46]

The passive and reflexive can be illustrated in the following pictoral forms:

---

[46] Bruce Waltke and M. O'Connor, *An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax* (Winon lake: Eisenbrauns, 1990), p. 363

Passive Voice
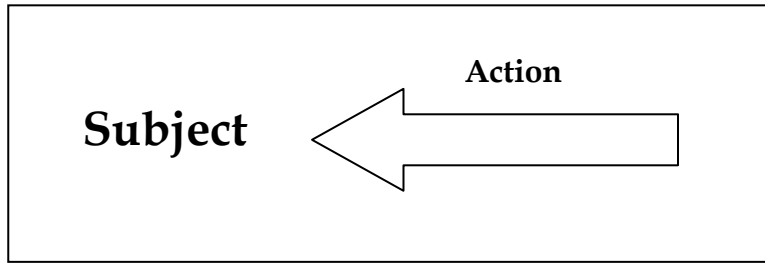
Middle Voice
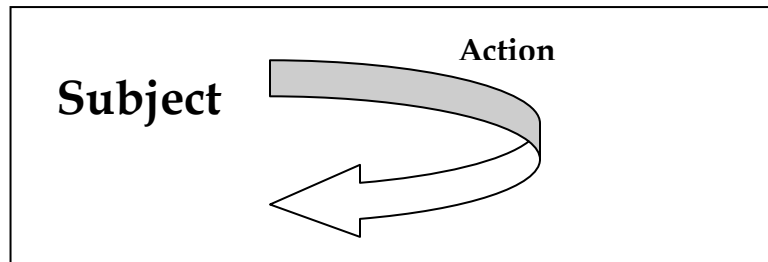
Niphʿal Perfect Form

To form the Niphʿal perfect strong verb, attach the Niphʿal prefix (נִ) to the perfect form. The addition of נִ will change the vowels according to the normal rules (e.g., shorting of the first vowel).

Niphʿal Perfect				
Qal Perfect 3ms	**Niphʿal prefix**		**Niphʿal Perfect**	
שָׁמַר	נִ	→	נִשְׁמַר	"he was kept" or "he kept himself"

Perfect				
	Qal	**Niphʿal**	**Passive**	**Reflective**
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive		
3 ms	שָׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר	he was kept	he kept himself
3 fs	שָׁמְרָה	נִשְׁמְרָה	she was kept	she kept herself
2 ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	נִשְׁמַרְתָּ	you were kept	you kept yourself
2 fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	נִשְׁמַרְתְּ	you were kept	you kept yourself
1 cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	נִשְׁמַרְתִּי	I was kept	I kept myself
3 cp	שָׁמְרוּ	נִשְׁמְרוּ	they were kept	they kept themselves
2 mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	you were kept	you kept yourselves
2 fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	you were kept	you kept yourselves
1 cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	נִשְׁמַרְנוּ	we were kept	we kept ourselves

Niphʿal Perfect Usage

1. *Simple passive action.* The Niphʿal Perfect can be used to describe action in the simple passive voice. For example, "For God knew that in the day you eat thereof, then your eyes **shall be opened**, and you shall be as gods, knowing good and evil." (Gen. 3:5)
2. *Simple reflexive action.* The Niphʿal Perfect can be used to express action in the simple reflexive action where the subject perfoms the action upon himself/herself. An example is, עַל־כֵּן קָרָא לַמָּקוֹם הַהוּא בְּאֵר שָׁבַע כִּי שָׁם **נִשְׁבְּעוּ** שְׁנֵיהֶם "Wherefore he called that place Beersheba; because there **they sware** both of them." (Gen. 21:31)
3. *A few verbs do not exist in the Qal form.* The Niphʿal Perfect is used in some cases for a Qal. Examples are the verbs נִלְחַם "he fought," and נִשְׁבַּע "he swore."

Niphʿal Imperfect Form

To form the Niphʿal imperfect strong verb, attach the Niphʿal prefix (נִ) to the imperfect verb form. Whenever the nun (נ) closes a syllable within a Hebrew word and is followed by a syllable divider (silent sheva), it is assimilated into the following consonants by means of a dagesh forte.[47]   In addition, the vowel under the first consonant is a qamets.

Niphʿal Imperfect				
Qal Imperfect 3ms	**Niphʿal prefix**		**Niphʿal Imperfect**	
יִשְׁמֹר	נִ	→	יִשָּׁמֵר	"he will be kept" or "he will keep himself"

---

[47] Kelley, p.139

Imperfect				
	Qal	**Niphʿal**	**Passive**	**Reflective**
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive		
3 ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יִשָּׁמֵר	he will be kept	he will keep himself
3 fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשָּׁמֵר	she will be kept	she will keep herself
2 ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשָּׁמֵר	you will be kept	you will keep yourself
2 fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשָּׁמְרִי	you will be kept	you will keep yourself
1 cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אֶשָּׁמֵר	I will be kept	I will keep myself
3 mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשָּׁמְרוּ	they will be kept	they will keep themselves
3 fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשָּׁמַרְנָה	they will be kept	they will keep themselves
2 mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשָּׁמְרוּ	you will be kept	you will keep yourselves
2 fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשָּׁמַרְנָה	you will be kept	you will keep yourselves
1 cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נִשָּׁמֵר	we will be kept	we will keep ourselves

Niphʿal Imperfect Usage
1. *Simple action in future time*. The Niphʿal Imperfect can describe simple passive or reflective action in future time. An example is, בָּאֵשׁ יִשָּׂרֵף "with fire it shall be burned" (Lev. 7:19)
2. *Repeated, habitual, or customary action*. The Niphʿal Imperfect can describe action or an act as repeatitive, habitual, or customary. An example is, יְהוָה תִּקָּרֵאוּ וְאַתֶּם כֹּהֲנֵי "And you shall be called the priests of the LORD" (Isa. 61:6)
3. *Jussives and cohortatives*. The Niphʿal Imperfect can be used to express actions contingent upon other elements in the context. An example is, שָׁם אַרְבָּעִים אֲנָשִׁים אוּלַי יִמָּצְאוּן "Suppose there should be found there forty men" (Gen. 18:29)

Niphʿal Imperative Form
To form the Niphʿal imperative strong verb, change the תּ prefix of the Qal imperfect verb to the הִ prefix for the second person forms.

Niphʿal Imperative				
	Qal	**Niphʿal**		**Niphʿal**

	Imperfect	prefix		Imperative	
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמֵר	keep!
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמְרִי	keep!
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמְרוּ	keep!
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמַרְנָה	keep!

Niphʿal Imperative Usage

The Niphʿal imperative describes action that is a command in the passive or reflexive voice. An example is הִשָּׁמֶר לְךָ פֶּן־תִּשְׁכַּח אֶת־יְהוָה "take heed to yourself lest you forget the LORD" (Deut. 6:12). The passive sense of the Niphʿal imperative is often lost.

Niphʿal Infinitive Form

1. *Niphʿal infinitive construct*. The Niphʿal infinitive construct has the same form as the masculine singular imperative. To form the Niphʿal infinitive strong verb, change the תּ prefix to the הִ prefix in the Qal imperfect verb 2ms form.

Niphʿal Infinitive Construct				
Qal Imperfect	**Niphʿal prefix**		**Niphʿal Infinitive**	
תִּשְׁמֹר	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמֵר	to be kept

2. *Niphʿal infinitive absolute*. The Niphʿal infinitive absolute is formed in two ways. The first form is similar to the construct state replacing the תּ prefix to the הִ prefix in the Qal imperfect verb 2ms form and droping the final syllable vowel *sere*. The second preserves the Niphʿal prefix נִ.

Niphʿal Infinitive Absolute				
Qal Imperfect	**Niphʿal prefix**		**Niphʿal Infinitive**	
תִּשְׁמֹר	הִ	→	הִשָּׁמֹר	being kept
	נִ	→	Alt. נִשְׁמֹר	

Usage of the Niphʿal Infinitive

The Niphʿal infinitive is used in Genesis 2:4:

אֵלֶּה תוֹלְדוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְהָאָרֶץ **בְּהִבָּרְאָם** בְּיוֹם עֲשׂוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶרֶץ וְשָׁמָיִם

"This is the generations of the heavens and the earth **when they were created**, in the day that the LORD God made the earth and the heavens," (Gen 2:4)

.

Niphʿal Participle Form

The Niphʿal participle is formed by adding the Niphʿal prefix נ to the Qal Participle form.

	Qal Participle	Niphʿal prefix		Niphʿal Participle	
ms	שָׁמוּר	נִ	→	נִשְׁמָר	keeping
mp	שְׁמוּרִים	נִ	→	נִשְׁמָרִים	keeping
fs	שְׁמוּרָה	נִ	→	נִשְׁמָרָה	keeping
fp	שְׁמוּרוֹת	נִ	→	נִשְׁמָרוֹת	keeping

Usage of the Niphʿal Participle

The Niphʿal participle is used in Psalm 102:18:

תִּכָּתֶב זֹאת לְדוֹר אַחֲרוֹן וְעַם **נִבְרָא** יְהַלֶּל־יָהּ

"This will be written for the generation to come, that a people **yet to be created** may praise the LORD." (Ps. 102:18)

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary.

   II. Memorize the Niphʿal perfect form.

   III. Translate the following:

      1. תְּשַׁלַּח רוּחֲךָ יִבָּרֵאאוּון וּתְחַדֵּשׁ פְּנֵי אֲדָמָה (Ps. 104:30)

      2. מְקַלֶּלְךָ אָאֹר וְנִבְרְכוּ בְךָ כֹּל מִשְׁפְּחֹת הָאֲדָמָה (that bless you) וַאֲבָרֲכָה (And I will bless) (Gen. 12:3)

      3. וְיִירְאוּ גוֹיִם אֶת־שֵׁם יְהוָה וְכָל־מַלְכֵי הָאָרֶץ אֶת־כְּבוֹדֶךָ (Ps. 102:16; Heb. Ps. 102:17)

      4. כִּי־כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה חִנָּם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וְלֹא בְכֶסֶף תִּגָּאֵלוּ (Isa. 52:3)

Chapter Seventeen

Pi‘el Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

זָכָר	male (m)	פָּנָה	to turn toward, face, prepare
זָנָה	to commit fornication, play the harlot	צֶדֶק	righteousness, just (m)
הָפַךְ	to turn, overturn	צוה	(Piel) to command
חָרָה	to become hot, angry	רָחַץ	to wash
כפר	(Piel) to cover, make atonement	רָעַע	to be wicked, evil
מאן	(Piel) to refuse	שָׂבַע	to satisfy
מִגְרָשׁ	pasture (m or f)	שִׁיר	to sing
מַמְלָכָה	kingdom (f)	שִׁית	to put, place, set
סוּר	to turn aside	שָׁמֵם	to be astonished, desolate
ספר	to count, (Piel) to tell, relate	תּוֹעֵבָה	abomination (f)

Pi‘el

The Pi‘el (פִּעֵל) is the intensive verb stem. It is used to express intensive active or causative action. This intensifying of the stem serves to strengthen and/or repetition of the action.

Qal	Pi‘el
שָׁאַל "ask"	שָׁאֵל "beg"
כִּי שָׁאַל שְׁלֹמֹ אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה	וְנוֹעַ יָנוּעוּ בָנָיו וְשִׁאֵלוּ
That Solomon **had asked** this thing (1 Kgs. 3:10)	"Let his sons wander and **beg**" (Ps. 109:10)

Usage of the Piʿel

1. *Intensive*. The primary use of the Piʿel is to express an intensification of the verb. Intenfication expressing the strengthening or repetition of the action[48]. Dr. Page Kelley gives the following examples[49]:

Qal Perfect 3ms		Piʿel Perfect 3ms	
נָשַׁק	He kissed	נִשֵּׁק	He kissed repeatedly
שָׁבַר	He broke	שִׁבֵּר	He shattered

2. *Causitive*. Gesenius writes of the Piʿel, "The eager pursuit of an action may also consist in urging and causing others to do the same." [50] This causative usage of the Piʿel is much like the Hifʿil. Dr. Kelley idenfies the following examples:

Qal Perfect 3ms		Piʿel Perfect 3ms	
אָבַד	He perished	אִבַּד	He destroyed
גָּדַל	He was great	גִּדֵּל	He exalted (made great)
לָמַד	He learned	לִמֵּד	He taught

3. *Obsolete (denominative)*. Some verbs have no Qal form, the Piʿel is used and the meaning may be the simple active sense. For example:

Piʿel Perfect 3ms				
בִּקֵּשׁ	He sought		מִהַר	He hastened
בֵּרֵךְ	He blessed		נִסָּה	He tried, tested
דִּבֵּר	He spoke		נִצַּח	He led, directed
הִלֵּל	He praised		צִוָּה	He commanded
זִמֵּר	He sang (with instrumental accompaniment)		קִדֵּם	He was before
יִחֵל	He waited		קִטֵּר	He made to smoke
כִּבֵּס	He washed, cleaned		קִנֵּא	He was envious, zealous
מֵאֵן	He refused		שֵׁרֵת	He ministered, served

Piʿel Perfect Form

To form the Piʿel perfect, place a hireq (֑) under the first root consonant and a daghesh forte (·) in the second root consonant.

Perfect

---

[48] *Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1910), p. 141
[49] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 109
[50] *Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1910), p.141

	Qal		Piʻel
3ms	שָׁמַר	→	שִׁמֵּר

Perfect			
	Qal	**Piʻel**	**Translation**
3ms	שָׁמַר	שִׁמֵּר	He guarded
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	שִׁמְּרָה	She guarded
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	שִׁמַּרְתָּ	You guarded
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	שִׁמַּרְתְּ	You guarded
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	שִׁמַּרְתִּי	I guarded
3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	שִׁמְּרוּ	They guarded
2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	שִׁמַּרְתֶּם	You guarded
2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	שִׁמַּרְתֶּן	You guarded
1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	שִׁמַּרְנוּ	We guarded

Piʻel Imperfect Form

To form the Piʻel imperfect, place a sheva (ְ) under the first performative, a pathach (ַ) under the first root consonant, and a daghesh forte (ּ) in the second root consonant.

Imperfect			
	Qal		**Piʻel**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	→	יְשַׁמֵּר

Imperfect			
	Qal	**Piʻel**	**Translation**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יְשַׁמֵּר	He will guard
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תְּשַׁמֵּר	She will guard
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תְּשַׁמֵּר	You will guard
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תְּשַׁמְּרִי	You will guard
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אֲשַׁמֵּר	I will guard
3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יְשַׁמְּרוּ	They will guard
3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תְּשַׁמֵּרְנָה	They will guard
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תְּשַׁמְּרוּ	You will guard
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תְּשַׁמֵּרְנָה	You will guard
1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נְשַׁמֵּר	We will guard

Pi‘el Imperative Form

To form the Pi‘el imperative, start with the Qal imperfect, remove the performative, place a pathach (ַ) under the first root consonant, and a daghesh forte (ּ) in the second root consonant.

	Qal Imperfect		Pi‘el Imperative
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	→	שַׁמֵּר

	Qal Imperfect	Pi‘el Imperative	Translation
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	שַׁמֵּר	(you) guard!
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	שַׁמְּרִי	(you) guard!
2mp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	שַׁמְּרוּ	(you) guard!
2fp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	שַׁמֵּרְנָה	(you) guard!

Pi‘el Imperative Usage

1. Normal usage. The normal usage of the imperative is to express an intensive command. For example, הַלְלוּ־יָהּ הַלְלִי נַפְשִׁי אֶת־יְהוָה "Praise the LORD! **Praise** the LORD, O my soul!" (Ps. 146:1)
2. Used with pronominal suffix. For example, לַמְּדֵנִי חֻקֶּיךָ "**Teach me** thy statutes!" (Ps. 119:12).
3. Used with the particle of entreaty (נָא). וְעַתָּה דַּבֶּר־**נָא** אֶל־הַמֶּלֶךְ "Now therefore, I pray thee, speak to the king." (2 Sam. 13:13)
4. Used with the emphatic ָה suffix. סַפְּרָה־נָּא לִי כָּל־הַגְּדֹלוֹת אֲשֶׁר־עָשָׂה אֱלִישָׁע "Tell me, I pray, all the great things that Elisha has done." (2 Kings 8:4)

Pi‘el Infinitive Form

The Pi‘el Infinitive construct and absolute have the same form as the Pi‘el Imperative 2ms.

	Qal Imperfect		Pi‘el Imperative	Pi‘el Infinitive Construct	Pi‘el Infinitive Absolute
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	→	שַׁמֵּר	שַׁמֵּר	שַׁמֵּר (שַׁמֹּר)

Pi'el Participle Form

To form the Pi'el participle, start with the Qal participle, add the Pi'el participle prefix (מְ)
add the pathach (ַ) under the first root consonant, and the daghesh forte (ּ) in the second
root consonant.

	Qal Participle		Pi'el Participle	
ms	שֹׁמֵר	→	מְשַׁמֵּר	Guarding
mp	שֹׁמְרִים	→	מְשַׁמְּרִים	Guarding
fs	שֹׁמְרָה	→	מְשַׁמְּרָה	Guarding
fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת	→	מְשַׁמְּרוֹת	Guarding

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary

   II. Memorize the Pi'el Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative, and Participle forms.

  III. Translate the following:

    1. אֱלֹהַי פַּלְּטֵנִי מִיַּד רָשָׁע   (Ps. 71:4a)

    2. וַיְבָרֶךְ אֹתָם אֱלֹהִים לֵאמֹר פְּרוּ וּרְבוּ וּמִלְאוּ אֶת־הַמַּיִם בַּיַּמִּים וְהָעוֹף יִרֶב בָּאָרֶץ   (Gen. 1:22)

    3. בְּכָל־דְּרָכֶיךָ דָעֵהוּ וְהוּא יְיַשֵּׁר אֹרְחֹתֶיךָ   (Prov. 3:6)

    4. הַדְרִיכֵנִי (lead me) בַאֲמִתֶּךָ וְלַמְּדֵנִי כִּי־אַתָּה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׁעִי אוֹתְךָ קִוִּיתִי כָּל־הַיּוֹם   (Ps. 25:5)

    5. וְנִגְלָה (uncover) כְּבוֹד יְהוָה וְרָאוּ כָל־בָּשָׂר יַחְדָּו כִּי פִּי יְהוָה דִּבֵּר   (Isa. 40:5)

Chapter Eighteen

Pu‘al Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אֱנוֹשׁ	man, mankind	חָנַן	to be gracious to, favor
אָסַר	to bind	מוֹעֵד	appointed time, place
בֶּגֶד	garment	מַרְאֶה	sight, appearance
בְּרָכָה	blessing (f)	נֶגֶב	the dry country, south
גּוֹרָל	lot, portion, share	עוּר	to arouse, awake
גֶּפֶן	vine (f)	עָפָר	dry earth, dust
גֶּשֶׁם	rain, shower	עָרַךְ	to arrange, set in order
זָעַק	to cry out	פַּעַם	foot, step, time (f)
חָזָה	to see, preceive	רָחַץ	to wash, wash off
חָלָה	to become weak, sick	שָׂכַל	to have success, prosper

Pu‘al

The Pu‘al (פֻּעַל) is the intensive passive verb stem. The Pu‘al is used to express intensive action with a passive voice. For example:

הִנֵּה יוֹם־בָּא לַיהוָה וְחֻלַּק שְׁלָלֵךְ בְּקִרְבֵּךְ

"Behold, the day of the LORD is coming, and your spoil **will be divided** in your midst." (Zech. 14:1)

Pu‘al Perfect Form

To form the Pu‘al perfect, place a Qibbuts (ֻ) under the first root consonant and a Daghesh Forte (·) in the second root consonant.

Perfect			
	Qal		**Pu‘al**
3ms	שָׁמַר	→	שֻׁמַּר

Perfect			
	Qal	**Puʿal**	**Translation**
3ms	שָׁמַר	שֻׁמַּר	he was guarded
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	שֻׁמְּרָה	she was guarded
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	שֻׁמַּרְתָּ	you were guarded
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	שֻׁמַּרְתְּ	you were guarded
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	שֻׁמַּרְתִּי	I was guarded
3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	שֻׁמְּרוּ	they were guarded
2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	שֻׁמַּרְתֶּם	you were guarded
2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	שֻׁמַּרְתֶּן	you were guarded
1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	שֻׁמַּרְנוּ	we were guarded

Puʿal Imperfect Form

To form the Puʿal imperfect, place a Sheva (ְ) under the imperfect performative, a
Qibbuts (ֻ) under the first root consonant, and a Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root
consonant.

Imperfect			
	Qal		**Puʿal**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	→	יְשֻׁמַּר

Imperfect			
	Qal	**Puʿal**	**Translation**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יְשֻׁמַּר	He will be guarded
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תְּשֻׁמַּר	She will be guarded
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תְּשֻׁמַּר	You will be guarded
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תְּשֻׁמְּרִי	You will be guarded
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אֲשֻׁמַּר	I will be guarded
3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יְשֻׁמְּרוּ	They will be guarded
3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תְּשֻׁמַּרְנָה	They will be guarded
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תְּשֻׁמְּרוּ	You will be guarded
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תְּשֻׁמַּרְנָה	You will be guarded
1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נְשֻׁמַּר	We will be guarded

Puʿal Infinitive Form

The Puʿal Infinitive construct and absolute are formed as follows.

Puʿal Infinitive Construct	Puʿal Infinitive Absolute
שֻׁמַּר	שֻׁמֹּר

Puʿal Participle Form

To form the Puʿal participle, start with the Qal participle, add the participle prefix (מְ) add the Qibbuts (ֻ) under the first root consonant, and the Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root consonant.

	Qal Passive Participle		Puʿal Participle	
ms	שָׁמוּר	→	מְשֻׁמָּר	Being guarded
mp	שְׁמוּרִים	→	מְשֻׁמָּרִים	Being guarded
fs	שְׁמוּרָה	→	מְשֻׁמָּרָה	Being guarded
fp	שְׁמוּרוֹת	→	מְשֻׁמָּרוֹת	Being guarded

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary

    II. Memorize the Puʿal Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.

    III. Translate the following:

        1. וַיֹּאמֶר הָאָדָם זֹאת הַפַּעַם עֶצֶם מֵעֲצָמַי וּבָשָׂר מִבְּשָׂרִי לְזֹאת יִקָּרֵא אִשָּׁה כִּי מֵאִישׁ לֻקֳחָה־זֹּאת (Gen. 2:23)

        2. (he profaned)וַיְהִי כִּי־הֵחֵל הָאָדָם לָרֹב עַל־פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה וּבָנוֹת יֻלְּדוּ לָהֶם (Gen. 6:1)

        3. הִנֵּה יוֹם־בָּא לַיהוָה וְחֻלַּק שְׁלָלֵךְ בְּקִרְבֵּךְ (Zech. 14:1)

        4. טוֹב־לִי כִי־עֻנֵּיתִי לְמַעַן אֶלְמַד חֻקֶּיךָ (Ps. 119:71)

Chapter Nineteen

Hithpaʿel Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אָהַב	to love	עֵד	a witness, testimony, evidence
בָּרָא	to create	עֵז	goat
דָּבַק	to cleave, cling to	עַתָּה	now
דּוֹר	generation	פֹּה	here
הָרָה	to conceive, become pregnant	פָּלַל	(Hithpa.) to pray
כָּבוֹד	glory, honor	פֶּן	lest
מָה	what?	קִיר	wall
מִי	who?	שׁוֹפָר	ram's horn, trumpet
מִקְדָּשׁ	sanctuary	שֶׁמֶן	oil, fat
נַעֲרָה	young woman	שֶׁקֶר	deception, falsehood

Hithpaʿel

The Hithpaʿel (הִתְפַּעֵל) is the intensive reflexive verb stem. The Hithpaʿel is used to express intensive action with a reflective voice.

Qal		Hithpaʿel[51]	
אָמֵץ	He was strong	הִתְאַמֵּץ	He strengthened himself
נָפַל	He fell	הִתְנַפֵּל	He prostrated himself
נָשָׂא	He lifted	הִתְנַשֵּׂא	He exalted himself
קָדַשׁ	He was holy	הִתְקַדֵּשׁ	He sanctified himself

For example:

יִתְיַצְּבוּ מַלְכֵי־אֶרֶץ וְרוֹזְנִים נוֹסְדוּ־יָחַד עַל־יְהוָה וְעַל־מְשִׁיחוֹ

"The kings of the earth **set themselves**, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD and against His Anointed" (Psalm 2:2)

---

[51] Adapted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 110

Hithpaʿel Perfect Form
To form the Hithpaʿel perfect, add the Hithpaʿel prefix (הִת), a Pathach (ַ) under the first root consonant, and a Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root consonant.

Example, הִתְפַּקֵּד = הִת + פָּקַד   "he appointed himself"

Perfect			
	Qal	**Hithpaʿel**	**Translation**
3ms	פָּקַד	הִתְפַּקֵּד	he appointed himself
3fs	פָּקְדָה	הִתְפַּקְּדָה	she appointed herself
2ms	פָּקַדְתָּ	הִתְפַּקַּדְתָּ	you appointed yourself
2fs	פָּקַדְתְּ	הִתְפַּקַּדְתְּ	you appointed yourself
1cs	פָּקַדְתִּי	הִתְפַּקַּדְתִּי	I appointed myself
3cp	פָּקְדוּ	הִתְפַּקְּדוּ	they appointed themselves
2mp	פְּקַדְתֶּם	הִתְפַּקַּדְתֶּם	you appointed yourselves
2fp	פְּקַדְתֶּן	הִתְפַּקַּדְתֶּן	you appointed yourselves
1cp	פָּקַדְנוּ	הִתְפַּקַּדְנוּ	we appointed ourselves

Vocal Changes
There are changes that occur based on the natural way Hebrew is pronounced.

1. *Sibilants* ס, שׂ, *or* שׁ. When the Hithpaʿel prefix (הִת) is placed before one of the sibilants ס, שׂ, or שׁ, the prefix ת is moved to the other side of the sibilant[52].

הִת + שָׁמַר	→	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	"he guarded himself"
הִת + סָתַר	→	הִסְתַּתֵּר	"he hid himself"

2. *Emphatic sibilant* צ. When the Hithpaʿel prefix (הִת) is placed before an emphatic sibilant צ, not only does the prefix move, but the prefix ת is changed to the emphatic dental ט.

הִת + צָדֵק	→	הִצְטַדֵּק	"he justified himself"

3. *Assimilation of* ת. When the Hithpaʿel prefix (הִת) is placed before the dentals ד, ט, or ת, the prefix ת assimilates and the dental receives a daghesh forte.

הִת + טַהֵר	→	הִטַּהֵר	"he purified himself"

---

[52] This is referred to as metathesis: the transposition of two contiguous (side-by-side) consonants in order to smooth out pronunciation of the word.

Hithpaʿel Perfect Form of שָׁמַר

Perfect			
	Qal	**Hithpaʿel**	**Translation**
3ms	שָׁמַר	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	he guarded himself
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	הִשְׁתַּמְּרָה	she guarded herself
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתָּ	you guarded yourself
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתְּ	you guarded yourself
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתִּי	I guarded myself
3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	הִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	they guarded themselves
2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתֶּם	you guarded yourselves
2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתֶּן	you guarded yourselves
1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְנוּ	we guarded ourselves

Hithpaʿel Imperfect Form

To form the Hithpaʿel imperfect, add the unique Hithpaʿel imperfect performative, a Pathach (ַ) under the first root consonant, and a Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root consonant. The Hithpaʿel imperfect performatives are יִתְ, תִּתְ, אֶתְ and נִתְ.

Imperfect			
	Qal	**Hithpaʿel**	**Translation**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יִשְׁתַּמֵּר	he will guard himself
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּר	she will guard herself
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּר	you will guard yourself
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשְׁתַּמְּרִי	you will guard yourself
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אֶשְׁתַּמֵּר	I will guard myself
3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	they will guard themselves
3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	they will guard themselves
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	you will guard yourselves
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	you will guard yourselves
1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נִשְׁתַּמֵּר	we will guard ourselves

Hithpaʿel Infinitive Form

The Hithpaʿel infinitive construct and absolute are the same and are formed as follows: add the Hithpaʿel prefix (הִתְ) and the verbal stem with a Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root consonant.

Hithpaʿel Infinitive
הִשְׁתַּמֵּר

Hithpaʿel Imperative Form

The Hithpaʿel imperative has the same form as the infinitive with the addition of the imperative sufformatives.

	Qal Imperative		Hithpaʿel Imperative	
2 ms	שְׁמֹר	→	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	Guard yourself!
2 fs	שִׁמְרִי	→	הִשְׁתַּמְּרִי	Guard yourself!
2 mp	שִׁמְרוּ	→	הִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	Guard yourselves!
2 fp	שְׁמֹרְנָה	→	הִשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	Guard yourselves!

Hithpaʿel Participle Form

To form the Hithpaʿel participle, add the Hithpaʿel participle prefix (מִתְ), add the verbal stem with the Daghesh Forte (ּ) in the second root consonant, and the participle suffix.

	Qal Participle		Hithpaʿel Participle	
ms	שֹׁמֵר	→	מִשְׁתַּמֵּר	guarding himself
mp	שֹׁמְרִים	→	מִשְׁתַּמְּרִים	guarding themselves
fs	שֹׁמְרָה	→	מִשְׁתַּמְּרָה	guarding herself
fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת	→	מִשְׁתַּמְּרוֹת	guarding themselves

Practice

   I.   Memorize the vocabulary

   II. Memorize the Hithpaʿel Perfect for שָׁמַר, Imperfect, and Participle forms.

   III. Translate the following:

      1.   וְגִבַּרְתִּים בַּיהוָה וּבִשְׁמוֹ יִתְהַלָּכוּ נְאֻם יְהוָה   (Zech. 10:12)

      2.   וַיִּתְהַלֵּךְ חֲנוֹךְ אֶת־הָאֱלֹהִים וְאֵינֶנּוּ כִּי־לָקַח אֹתוֹ אֱלֹהִים (Gen. 5:24)

      3.   וַיִּנָּחֶם יְהוָה כִּי־עָשָׂה אֶת־הָאָדָם בָּאָרֶץ וַיִּתְעַצֵּב אֶל־לִבּוֹ (Gen. 6:6)

      4. וַתִּתְפַּלֵּל חַנָּה וַתֹּאמַר עָלַץ לִבִּי בַּיהוָה רָמָה קַרְנִי בַּיהוָה רָחַב פִּי עַל־אוֹיְבַי כִּי שָׂמַחְתִּי בִּישׁוּעָתֶךָ
       (1 Sam. 2:1)

Chapter Twenty

Hifʻil Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אֵת	with	שׁוֹפָר	ram's horn, trumpet
בדל	to separate, divide	תָּמִיד	continuously
בקשׁ	to seek	מָלַט	to escape
בַּרְזֶל	iron	נָשָׂא	to lift, carry
יוֹמָם	daily	סָתַר	to conceal
כֶּרֶם	vineyard	עָוֹן	iniquity, guilt
מִין	species, kind	פֶּשַׁע	rebellion, transgression
מִלְחָמָה	war, battle (f)	רָקִיעַ	expanse, firmament
נְחֹשֶׁת	copper, bronze	שָׂרַף	to burn
קֶרֶב	midst	שָׁפַךְ	to pour out

Hifʻil

The Hifʻil (הִפְעִיל) is the causative active verb stem. The Hifʻil is used to express causative action.

Qal		Hifʻil	
יָדַע	He knew	הוֹדִיעַ	He caused to know
יָצָא	He went out	הוֹצִיא	He brought out
עָבַר	He passed over	הֶעֱבִיר	He brought over
שָׁכַן	He dwelled	הִשְׁכִּין	He caused to dwell
שָׁמַע	He heard	הִשְׁמִיעַ	He proclaimed

Example:

וְאֶתְּנָה בְרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וְאַרְבֶּה אוֹתְךָ בִּמְאֹד מְאֹד

"And I will make my covenant between me and you and **I will cause to multiply** you exceedingly." (Gen. 17:2)

Hif'il Perfect Form

The Hif'il perfect is identified by placing the Hif'il prefix (הַ) to the Qal form with either a Hireq Yod (ִי) or a Pathach (ַ) as the stem vowel, and the perfect suffix.

Perfect			
	Qal		**Hif'il**
3ms	שָׁמַר	→	הִשְׁמִיר

Perfect			
	Qal	**Hif'il**	**Translation**
3ms	שָׁמַר	הִשְׁמִיר	He caused to guard
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	הִשְׁמִירָה	She caused to guard
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	הִשְׁמַרְתָּ	You caused to guard
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	הִשְׁמַרְתְּ	You caused to guard
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	הִשְׁמַרְתִּי	I caused to guard
3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	הִשְׁמִירוּ	They caused to guard
2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	הִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	You caused to guard
2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	הִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	You caused to guard
1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	הִשְׁמַרְנוּ	We caused to guard

Hif'il Imperfect Form

To form the Hif'il imperfect, add the imperfect prefix, the Hireq Yod (ִי) verbal root, and the imperfect suffix.

Imperfect			
	Qal		**Hif'il**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	→	יַשְׁמִיר

Imperfect			
	Qal	**Hif'il**	**Translation**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יַשְׁמִיר	he will cause to guard
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תַּשְׁמִיר	she will cause to guard
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תַּשְׁמִיר	you will cause to guard
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תַּשְׁמִירִי	you will cause to guard
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אַשְׁמִיר	I will cause to guard
3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יַשְׁמִירוּ	they will cause to guard
3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תַּשְׁמֵרְנָה	they will cause to guard
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תַּשְׁמִירוּ	you will cause to guard
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תַּשְׁמֵרְנָה	you will cause to guard
1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נַשְׁמִיר	we will cause to guard

Hif'il Imperative Form

The Hif'il imperative is formed by adding the Hif'il prefix (הַ) with either a Hireq Yod (יִ) or a Tsere (ֵ), then add the imperative suffix.

	Qal Infinitive		Hif'il Imperative	
2 ms	שְׁמֹר	→	הַשְׁמֵר	cause to guard!
2 fs	שִׁמְרִי	→	הַשְׁמִירִי	cause to guard!
2 mp	שִׁמְרוּ	→	הַשְׁמִירוּ	cause to guard!
2 fp	שְׁמֹרְנָה	→	הַשְׁמֵרְנָה	cause to guard!

Hif'il Infinitive Form

1. *Hif'il infinitive construct*. The Hif'il infinitive construct is formed by adding the Hif'il prefix (הַ) with a Hireq Yod (יִ) to the Qal infinitive.

Hif'il Infinitive Construct			
Qal Infinitive		**Hif'il Infinitive const.**	
שְׁמֹר	→	הַשְׁמֵר	to cause to guard, guarding

2. *Hif'il infinitive absolute*. The Hif'il Infinitive absolute is formed by adding the Hif'il prefix (הַ) with a Tsere stem vowel (ֵ) to the Qal infinitive.

Hif'il Infinitive Absolute			
Qal Infinitive		**Hif'il Infinitive abs.**	
שְׁמֹר	→	הַשְׁמֵר	causing to guard

Hif'il Participle Form

To form the Hif'il participle, start with the Qal participle, add the participle prefix (מַ), add the verbal root Hireq Yod (יִ) and the participle suffix.

	Qal Participle		Hif'il Participle	
ms	שֹׁמֵר	→	מַשְׁמִיר	causing to guard
mp	שֹׁמְרִים	→	מַשְׁמִירִים	causing to guard
fs	שֹׁמְרָה	→	מַשְׁמִירָה	causing to guard
fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת	→	מַשְׁמִירוֹת	causing to guard

Practice

I. Memorize the vocabulary

II. Memorize the Hifʿil Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.

III. Translate the following:

1. (Gen 17:2) וְאֶתְּנָה בְרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וְאַרְבֶּה אוֹתְךָ בִּמְאֹד מְאֹד

2. (Gen. 17:6) וְהִפְרֵתִי אֹתְךָ בִּמְאֹד מְאֹד וּנְתַתִּיךָ לְגוֹיִם וּמְלָכִים מִמְּךָ יֵצֵאוּ

3. וַהֲקִמֹתִי אֶת־בְּרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וּבֵין זַרְעֲךָ אַחֲרֶיךָ לְדֹרֹתָם לִבְרִית עוֹלָם
   (Gen. 17:7) לִהְיוֹת לְךָ לֵאלֹהִים וּלְזַרְעֲךָ אַחֲרֶיךָ

4. (Isa. 40:8) יָבֵשׁ חָצִיר נָבֵל צִיץ וּדְבַר־אֱלֹהֵינוּ יָקוּם לְעוֹלָם

5. (Jonah 1:2) קוּם לֵךְ אֶל־נִינְוֵה הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה וּקְרָא עָלֶיהָ כִּי־עָלְתָה רָעָתָם לְפָנָי

Chapter Twenty-One

Hofʿal Strong Verbs

Vocabulary

אוֹ	or	לָכֵן	therefore
אוֹת	sign	מַלְכוּת	kingdom (f)
אֶרֶז	cedar (m)	שָׁם	there
בֶּטֶן	belly, womb (f)	צֹאן	flock, sheep
דְּמוּת	likeness, image (f)	צְבָאוֹת	hosts, armies
דַּעַת	knowledge (f)	צַדִּיק	righteous one
הִנֵּה הֵן	behold	צוּר	rock (m)
זֶרַע	seed (m)	צֶלֶם	image, likeness
חֹדֶשׁ	new moon, month	קֶרֶן	horn (f)
חוֹמָה	wall (f)	קֶשֶׁת	bow, rainbow (f)

Hofʿal

The Hofʿal (הָפְעַל) is the causative passive verb stem. The Hofʿal is used to express causative action with a passive voice.

Qal		Hofʿal[53]	
בִיא	He brought	הוּבָא	He was brought
מוּת	He killed	הוּמַת	He was killed
מָלַךְ	He reigned	הָמְלַךְ	He was made king

Example:

וְהוּכַן (hofal Perf) בַּחֶסֶד כִּסֵּא וְיָשַׁב עָלָיו בֶּאֱמֶת בְּאֹהֶל דָּוִד שֹׁפֵט וְדֹרֵשׁ מִשְׁפָּט וּמְהִר צֶדֶק

And the throne **will be caused to be established** in mercy; And One will sit on it in truth, in the tabernacle of David, Judging and seeking justice and hastening righteousness. (Isaiah 16:5)

---

[53] Adapted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 113

Hofʿal Perfect Form

The Hofʿal perfect is identified by placing the Hofʿal prefix, either the u-class (הֻ) or o-class (הָ) vowel to the Qal form, add a Pathach (ַ) as the stem vowel (except for 3fs & 3cp), and the perfect suffix[54].

Perfect: o-class[55]			
	Qal		**Hofʿal**
3ms	שָׁמַר	→	הָשְׁמַר

Perfect: u-class[56]			
	Hifʿil		**Hofʿal**
3ms	נצל	→	הֻצַּל

Perfect			
	Qal	**Hofʿal**	**Translation**
3ms	שָׁמַר	הָשְׁמַר	he was caused to guard
3fs	שָׁמְרָה	הָשְׁמְרָה	she was caused to guard
2ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	הָשְׁמַרְתָּ	you were caused to guard
2fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	הָשְׁמַרְתְּ	you were caused to guard
1cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	הָשְׁמַרְתִּי	I was caused to guard
3cp	שָׁמְרוּ	הָשְׁמְרוּ	they were caused to guard
2mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	הָשְׁמַרְתֶּם	you were caused to guard
2fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	הָשְׁמַרְתֶּן	you were caused to guard
1cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	הָשְׁמַרְנוּ	we were caused to guard

Hofʿal Imperfect Form

To form the Hofʿal imperfect, add the imperfect prefix, either the u-class (ֻ) or o-class (ָ) vowel to the imperfect prefix, add the Pathach (ַ) as the stem vowel verbal root (except for 3fs, 3mp & 3cp), and the imperfect suffix.

---

[54] Very few strong verbs appear in the Hofʿal stem.

[55] o-class vowels are: holem (ֹ), holem-vav (וֹ), and Qamets-Hatuf (ָ)

[56] u-class vowels are shureq (וּ) and qibbuts (ֻ)

Imperfect			
	Qal	**Hofʿal**	**Translation**
3ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יָשְׁמַר	he will be cause to guard
3fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תָּשְׁמַר	she will be cause to guard
2ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תָּשְׁמַר	you will be cause to guard
2fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תָּשְׁמְרִי	you will be cause to guard
1cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אָשְׁמַר	I will be cause to guard
3mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יָשְׁמְרוּ	they will be cause to guard
3fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תָּשְׁמַרְנָה	they will be cause to guard
2mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תָּשְׁמְרוּ	you will be cause to guard
2fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תָּשְׁמַרְנָה	you will be cause to guard
1cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נָשְׁמַר	we will be cause to guard

Hofʿal Participle Form

To form the Hofʿal participle, start with the Qal participle, add the participle prefix (מ), either the u-class (ֻ) or o-class (ָ) vowel to the prefix, add the Qamets (ָ) as the stem vowel verbal root, and the participle suffix.

	Qal Participle		**Hofʿal Participle**	
ms	שֹׁמֵר	→	מָשְׁמָר	causing to be guarding
mp	שֹׁמְרִים	→	מָשְׁמָרִים	causing to be guarding
fs	שֹׁמְרָה	→	מָשְׁמָרָה	causing to be guarding
fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת	→	מָשְׁמָרוֹת	causing to be guarding

Practice

   I. Memorize the vocabulary

  II. Memorize the Hofʿal Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.

 III. Translate the following:

    1. וְהוּכַן בַּחֶסֶד כִּסֵּא וְיָשַׁב עָלָיו בֶּאֱמֶת בְּאֹהֶל דָּוִד שֹׁפֵט וְדֹרֵשׁ מִשְׁפָּט וּמְהִר צֶדֶק (Isa. 16:5)

    2. (Job 5:23) כִּי עִם־אַבְנֵי הַשָּׂדֶה בְרִיתֶךָ וְחַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה הָשְׁלְמָה־לָךְ

    3. (Ps. Eng:22:16; Heb. 22:15) יָבֵשׁ כַּחֶרֶשׂ כֹּחִי וּלְשׁוֹנִי מֻדְבָּק מַלְקוֹחָי וְלַעֲפַר־מָוֶת תִּשְׁפְּתֵנִי

Chapter Twenty-Two

The Hebrew Sentence

Vocabulary

אָבָה	to be willing	הָרַס	to break down, destroy
אָז	then	חֹק	statute (f)
אֱמוּנָה	faithfulness, fidelity (f)	חָגַר	to bind, be girded
אָמֵץ	to be strong, firm, bold	יֵשׁ	there is, there are
אָפָה	to bake	לַיְלָה	night (m)
אָרַךְ	to prolong	לָשׁוֹן	tongue (m)
אָשֵׁם	to commit a wrong, be guilty	מָוֶת	death (m)
בְּאֵר	well (f)	עֵץ	tree (m)
בְּכוֹר	first-born, oldest	עֶרֶב	evening (m)
דְּבַשׁ	honey (m)	פְּרִי	fruit (m)

Syntax of the Hebrew sentence

The normal word order for Hebrew is verb-subject-object.

וַיִּקְרָא אֱלֹהִים לָרָקִיעַ שָׁמָיִם

"And God called the firmament heaven." (Gen. 1:8a)

Exceptions to word order

The verb may be preceded by an adverb, pronoun, or particle.
   1. The verb may be preceded by an adverb, a negative particle, or other modifers.

עַתָּה יָדַעְתִּי כִּי־גָדוֹל יְהוָה מִכָּל־הָאֱלֹהִים

"**Now** I know that Yahweh is greater than all gods." (Ex. 18:11a)

2. The verb may be preceded by an expression that provides context with the preceding clause or verse.

<div dir="rtl">בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֵת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ</div>

"**In the beginning**, God created the heavens and the earth" (Gen. 1:1)

3. The verb may be preceded by the interjection הִנֵּה "behold."

<div dir="rtl">הֵן גֵּרַשְׁתָּ אֹתִי הַיּוֹם מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה</div>

Behold, you have driven me out this day from the face of the earth (Gen. 4:14a)

4. The verb may be preceded by an independent personal pronoun to express emphasis.

<div dir="rtl">וְאַתֶּם תִּהְיוּ־לִי מַמְלֶכֶת כֹּהֲנִים</div>

"**And you** will be to me a kingdom of priests." (Ex. 19:6)

Verb Coordinate Conjunction Relationship

When two or more verbs are placed within a clause with a vav (ו) conjunction they form a coordinate relationship. The verb that stands first in the sequence functions as the governing verb that determines both the time and mode of the verbs linked to it.[57]

1. Coordinate relationship involving a perfect as the governing verb.
   a. *Perfect + Perfect sequence*. The two verbs are perfect so the resulting meaning is unchanged.

<div dir="rtl">דָּבָר שָׁלַח אֲדֹנָי בְּיַעֲקֹב וְנָפַל בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל</div>

   "The Lord **sent** a word against Jacob, **and it has fallen** on Israel"
   (Isa 9:7, English 9:8)

   b. *Perfect + Imperfect sequence*. This construction is called the true narrative sequence. The vav consecutive is attached to the imperfect and is translated as a past tense indicative verb. "It may describe an action resulting from a previous action (consequence) or an action subsequent to a previous action (sequence)."[58]

---

[57] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids:Eerdmans, 1992), p. 210
[58] ibid

זָכָר וּנְקֵבָה בְּרָאָם וַיְבָרֶךְ אֹתָם וַיִּקְרָא אֶת־שְׁמָם אָדָם

"Male and female **He created** them, **and He blessed** them and He named them mankind." (Gen. 5:2)

2. Relationships involving the imperfect as the governing verb.
   a. *Imperfect + Imperfect sequence*. The conjunction used in this sequence will be the ordinary form of the vav conjunction. The second verb in this sequence naturally expresses the outcome or purpose of the action of the first verb.

   יְבָרֶכְךָ יְהוָה וְיִשְׁמְרֶךָ

   "May the LORD bless you, **and may he keep you**." (Num. 6:24)

   b. *Imperfect + Perfect sequence*. The conjunction used in this sequence is to be translated as a normal imperfect in both places.
      i)   *Indicative Imperfect + Perfect Sequence.*

   הוּא מַלְאָכוֹ לְפָנֶיךָ וְלָקַחְתָּ אִשָּׁה לִבְנִי מִשָּׁם

He will send His angel before you, **and you will take** a wife for my son from there (Gen. 24:7)

      ii) *Jussive Imperfect + Perfect Sequence*. The jussive is the second or third person imperfect verb used to express a wish, desire, or command. The conjunction used in this sequence is to be translated as a normal jussive in both places.

   וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים יְהִי מְאֹרֹת בִּרְקִיעַ הַשָּׁמַיִם לְהַבְדִּיל בֵּין הַיּוֹם וּבֵין הַלָּיְלָה וְהָיוּ לְאֹתֹת וּלְמוֹעֲדִים וּלְיָמִים וְשָׁנִים

 Then God said, "**Let there be** lights in the firmament of the heavens to divide the day from the night; **and let them be** for signs and seasons, and for days and years." (Gen. 1:14)

      iii) *Cohortative Imperfect + Perfect Sequence*. The cohortative is the first person imperfect verb used to express the speaker's desire to perform an action and sometimes called the first person imperative. The conjunction used in this sequence is to be translated as a normal cohortative in both places.

   וָאַגִּיד לָהֶם אֶת־יַד אֱלֹהַי אֲשֶׁר־הִיא טוֹבָה עָלַי וְאַף־דִּבְרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר אָמַר־לִי וַיֹּאמְרוּ נָקוּם וּבָנִינוּ וַיְחַזְּקוּ יְדֵיהֶם לַטּוֹבָה

And I told them of the hand of my God which had been good upon me, and also of the king's words that he had spoken to me. So they said, "**Let us rise up and build**." Then they set their hands to this good work. (Neh. 2:18)

      iv) *Subjunctive Imperfect + Perfect Sequence*. The conjunction used in this sequence is to be translated as a normal subjunctive in both places.

   וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים הֵן הָאָדָם הָיָה כְּאַחַד מִמֶּנּוּ לָדַעַת טוֹב וָרָע וְעַתָּה פֶּן־יִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ וְלָקַח

גַּם מֵעֵץ הַחַיִּים וְאָכַל וָחַי לְעֹלָם

Then the Lord God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of Us, to know good and evil. And now, **lest he put out** his hand and **take** also of the tree of life, and eat, and live forever." (Gen 3:22)

3. Relationships involving an imperative as the govering verb. An imperative may serve as a govering verb when it is placed in sequence with a perfect, an imperfect, or another imperative. When an imperative functions as the governing verb, the verb that follows sometimes expresses the notion of purpose or result.

a. *Imperative + Perfect Sequence*. The perfect in this coordinate relationship must be translated as an imperative.

קַח־לְךָ מְגִלַּת־סֵפֶר **וְכָתַבְתָּ** אֵלֶיהָ אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר־דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ עַל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְעַל־יְהוּדָה וְעַל־כָּל־הַגּוֹיִם מִיּוֹם דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ מִימֵי יֹאשִׁיָּהוּ וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה

Take a scroll of a book **and write** on it all the words that I have spoken to you against Israel, against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spoke to you, from the days of Josiah even to this day. (Jer. 36:2)

b. *Imperative + Imperfect Sequence*. The imperfect in coordinate relationship with an imperative sometimes expresses purpose or result.

וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל אֱלִישָׁע וַיֹּאמַר יְהוָה **פְּקַח**־נָא אֶת־עֵינָיו **וְיִרְאֶה** וַיִּפְקַח יְהוָה אֶת־עֵינֵי הַנַּעַר וַיַּרְא וְהִנֵּה הָהָר מָלֵא סוּסִים וְרֶכֶב אֵשׁ סְבִיבֹת אֱלִישָׁע

And Elisha prayed, and said, "LORD, I pray, **open** his eyes that **he may see**." The the LORD opened the eyes of the young man, and he saw. And behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha. (2 Kings 6:17)

c. *Imperative + Imperative Sequence*. The second imperative in this sequence often expresses purpose or result.

סוּר מֵרָע **וַעֲשֵׂה**־טוֹב בַּקֵּשׁ שָׁלוֹם וְרָדְפֵהוּ

Depart from evil **and do** good; seek peace and pursue it. (Ps. 34:15; Eng. 34:14)

4. *Infinitive Absolute + Perfect Sequence*. The infinitive absolute may be used with the force of an imperative. In this case, the perfect is placed in sequence with the infinitive absolute and the perfect is translated as an imperative.

הָלוֹךְ וְדִבַּרְתָּ אֶל־דָּוִד

Go and say to David… (2 Sam. 24:12a)

5. *Participle + Perfect Sequence*. The participle is often used to describe an impending action, where something is destined to take place in the near future. This construction is most notably used with the particle הִנֵּה "behold!"

כִּי אָנֹכִי מֵת בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אֵינֶנִּי עֹבֵר אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן וְאַתֶּם **עֹבְרִים וִירִשְׁתֶּם** אֶת־הָאָרֶץ הַטּוֹבָה הַזֹּאת

But I must die in this land, I must not cross over the Jordan; but **you shall cross and possess** that good land. (Deut. 4:22)

הִנְנִי שֹׁלֵחַ מַלְאָכִי וּפִנָּה־דֶרֶךְ לְפָנָי

Behold, I send My messenger, **and he will prepare** the way before Me. (Mal. 3:1a)

Syntax of the Subject

1. The verb is normally followed by its subject (if the subject is specified).

וַיִּשְׁכֹּן כְּבוֹד־יְהוָה עַל־הַר סִינַי וַיְכַסֵּהוּ הֶעָנָן שֵׁשֶׁת יָמִים וַיִּקְרָא אֶל־מֹשֶׁה בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי מִתּוֹךְ הֶעָנָן

Now **the glory of Yahweh** dwelt upon Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days. And on the seventh day He called to Moses out of the midst of the cloud. (Ex. 24:16)

2. The subject may come before the verb in order to emplasize the subject.

יְהוָה יִמְלֹךְ לְעֹלָם וָעֶד

Yahweh will reign forever and ever. (Ex. 15:18)

Syntax of the Object

1. The indirect object is the person or thing that is indirectly affected by the action of the verb. It is usually marked with either the prepositional prefixes לְ (to, for) or אֶל־ (to, for) and precedes or follows the direct object.

יָדַעְתִּי כִּי־נָתַן יְהוָה לָכֶם אֶת־הָאָרֶץ

I know that Yahweh has given **to you** the land (Josh. 2:9)

2. A direct object will frequently stand after the verb or its subject. Definite direct objects may be marked by the sign of the direct object אֵת or אֶת־.

בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֵת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ

God created **the heavens and the earth** (Gen. 1:1)

3. The verb may precede the object in order to emphasize the object.

אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ תִּירָא

The LORD your God you shall fear. (Deut. 10:20)

Disjunctive Vav

A disjunctive vav is prefixed to a non-verbal word and serves to introduce some kind of break in the narrative. This construction can be divided into four classes.

1. *Parenthetical*. The disjunctive clause interrupts the narrative in order to provide an explaination that is important for understanding the narrative.

וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי שֹׁמֵעַ יוֹסֵף כִּי הַמֵּלִיץ בֵּינֹתָם

Now they did not know that Jossph was understanding them because there was an interpreter between them (Gen. 42:23). (The disjunctive vav וְהֵם introduces a parenthetical comment).

2. *Circumstantial*. The disjunctive clause introduces or identifies circumstantial information that relates to the main action of the narrative.

וַיְהִי כְּהַיּוֹם הַזֶּה וַיָּבֹא הַבַּיְתָה לַעֲשׂוֹת מְלַאכְתּוֹ וְאֵין אִישׁ מֵאַנְשֵׁי הַבַּיִת שָׁם בַּבָּיִת

And one day, he went into the house to do his work and none of the household servants were there in the house (Gen. 39:11). (The disjunctive vav אֵין introduces a circumstantial comment).

3. *Contrastive*. The contrastive clause is introduced by the disjunctive vav and serves to contrast one idea with another.

וַיִּשַׁע יְהוָה אֶל־הֶבֶל וְאֶל־מִנְחָתוֹ וְאֶל־קַיִן וְאֶל־מִנְחָתוֹ לֹא שָׁעָה

The Lord looked favorably on Abel and his offering but on Cain and his offering he did not look favorably (Gen. 4:4). (The disjunctive vav וְאֶל־קַיִן contrasts the Lord's response to the two men and their offerings[59].)

4. *Introductory*. A disjunctive vav may be used to introduce a new subject or theme.

וְהַנָּחָשׁ הָיָה עָרוּם מִכֹּל חַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים

Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the creatures that the Lord God had made (Gen. 3:1).

---

[59] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2001), p. 282

Conditional Sentences

Hebrew conditional sentences can be identified by the use of the conditionals הֵן, כִּי, אִם or אֲשֶׁר as the *protasis* followed by a perfect, imperfect or participle. The conditional's *apodosis* will often begin with the conjunction וְ. Drs. Pratico and Van Pelt give the following example from Judges 4:8[60],

וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלֶיהָ בָּרָק **אִם**־תֵּלְכִי עִמִּי וְהָלָכְתִּי וְ**אִם**־לֹא תֵלְכִי עִמִּי לֹא אֵלֵךְ

Barak said to her, "*if* you will go with me, ***then*** I will go; but *if* you will not go with me, (*then*) I will not go" (Judges 4:8)

Condition (Protasis)		Consequence (Apodosis)
אִם־תֵּלְכִי עִמִּי		וְהָלָכְתִּי
"if (אִם) you will go"		"then I will go"
וְאִם־לֹא תֵלְכִי עִמִּי		לֹא אֵלֵךְ
"but if (אִם) you will not go"		"(then) I will not go"

    a. A Hebrew conditional sentence may not possess any identifiers.

וְעָזַב אֶת־אָבִיו וָמֵת

If he leaves his father, then he will die (Gen. 44:22)

Adverbs

Adverbs modify the verb. They further describe, limit or qualify the verb, adjective, or another adverb.

    1. Adverbs of Time

עַתָּה   now   טֶרֶם   before, not yet

---

[60] Gary Pratico & Miles Van Pelt, *Basics of Biblical Hebrew Grammar* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2007), p. 280

אָז   then, at that time

2. *Adverbs of Place*

| פֹּה | here | שָׁם | there |
| הֵנָּה | here | חוּץ | outside |

3. *Adverbs of Degree*

| מְאֹד | very | תָּמִיד | continually |
| עוֹד | again | | |

4. *Adverbs of Manner*

| יַחְדָּו | together | פִּתְאֹם | suddenly |

Practice
    I.   Memorize the vocabulary

Chapter Twenty-Three

First Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

אֶלֶף	Ox, thousand	חָמֵשׁ	five (m)
חוּץ	A place outside the house, a street	חֲמִשָּׁה	five (f)
מֵאָה	hundred (f)	שֵׁשׁ	six (m)
פָּנִים	face (faces)	שִׁשָּׁה	six (f)
שְׁנַיִם	two (m)	שֶׁבַע	seven (m)
שְׁתַּיִם	two (f)	שִׁבְעָה	seven (f)
שָׁלֹשׁ	three (m)	שְׁמֹנֶה	eight (m)
שְׁלֹשָׁה	three (f)	שְׁמֹנָה	eight (f)
אַרְבַּע	four (m)	תֵּשַׁע	nine (m)
אַרְבָּעָה	four (f)	עֶשֶׂר	ten (m)

Classification of weak verbs

There are ten classifications of weak verbs based upon the position of the guttural within the verb. Remember strong ("sounding") verbs are fairly standard while weak ("sounding") verbs are subdivided into the ten groupings. The following is a review of the basics.

A. *Strong verbs*. A strong verb contains three strong consonants in the root form. The strong consonants are: ב, ג, ד, ז, ט, כ, ל, מ, נ (middle consonant), ס, פ, צ, ק, ר (final consonant), שׁ, שׂ, ת.

B. *Weak verbs*. A verb is classified as weak if it contains one of the following:
   1. The verb contains one or more guttural consonants. The gutturals are: א, ה, ח, ע, and sometimes ר.
   2. The verb begins with י, ו, or נ.
   3. The verb's second and third consonants are identical (Geminate).
   4. The verb is a middle vowel verb or a two consonant root (biconsonantal) verb.

113

Rules of Gutturals
1. Gutturals cannot be doubled. Since gutturals do not possess a dagesh forte they require lengthening of the preceding vowel. Lengthening has the following rules[61]:
   i)   Patach (ַ) is lengthened to Qamets (ָ).
   ii)   Hireq (ִ) is lengthened to Tsere (ֵ).
   iii)   Qibbuts (ֻ) is lengthed to Holem (ֹ).
2. Gutturals usually take "a" class vowels.
   i)   Normally the vowel following the guttural will be a Patach (ַ).
   ii)   When a strong guttural (ה, ח, & ע) is the final consonant in a word, the "a" class vowel will come before the guttural.
   iii)   When the vowel before the final guttural is unchangeably long, i.e., ִי, ֵי, וֹ, וּ, a Patach (ַ) must be inserted between this vowel and the final guttural.
3. Gutturals usually take compound shevas (ֱ, ֲ, ֳ) rather than a simple sheva.

Weak Verb Designations					
III ל	**II** ע	**I** פ	← **Modern designation** ← **Traditional**	**Modern**	**Description**
1	ד	מֹ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שָ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לַ	שָ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נֲ	בָ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פֹ	נְ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	וֹ	שֹ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שֵ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

First Guttural Verbs

A First Guttural verb designated as Pe Guttural or I-Guttural is one whose initial consonant is one of the gutturals: ה, ח, ע, or ר. When the first consonant is א it may be a Pe Guttural (I-Guttural) or its own class called the Pe Alef (I-'Alef). Examples where the first root consonant is a guttural are:

---

[61] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmanns, 1992), p. 223

1st Root Consonant	Word	
א	אָהַב	He loved
ה	הָרַג	he killed
ח	חָזַק	he was strong, firm
ע	עָבַד	he served, worked
ר	רָאָה	he saw

1. **I-Guttural in the Piel, Pual, and Hithpael stems.** I-Guttural verbs in the Piel, Pual, and Hithpael stems follow the same rules as strong verbs.

Verb	Strong	I-Guttural[62]
Piel Perfect 3 ms	מִשֵּׁל	עִמֵּד
Pual Perfect 3 ms	מֻשַּׁל	עֻמַּד
Hitpael Perfect 3 ms	הִתְמַשֵּׁל	הִתְעַמֵּד

2. **I-Guttural verbs differ in the Qal, Nifal, Hifil and Hofal stems**. The differences for I-Guttural verbs in the Qal, Nifal, Hifil and Hofal stems can be divided into three groups.

   i) **The initial consonant cannot be doubled so the vowel must be lengthened.** This rule only applies to Nifal forms that are prefixed resulting in a doubling of the initial root consonant (dagesh forte added).

Nifal Imperfect		
	Strong Verb	I-Guttural
3 m s	יִמָּשֵׁל	יֵעָמֵד

   ii) **Gutturals normally take compound shevas**.
   a) For shevas that come after I-Gutturals in the Qal stem, the vowel must be a compound sheva.

Qal Perfect		
	Strong Verb	I-Guttural
2 m p	מְשַׁלְתֶּם	עֲמַדְתֶּם

---

[62] This section and examples are modeled and adopted from Page Kelley's Grammar

b) A silent sheva that is normally attached to the prefix syllable is changed to a compound sheva of an I-Guttural and the first vowel becomes short.

Qal Imperfect			
	Strong Verb	**I-Guttural**	**I-Guttural**
3 m s	יִמְשֹׁל	יַעֲמֹד	יֶחֱזַק
2 f s	תִּמְשְׁלִי	תַּעַמְדִי	תֶּחֶזְקִי

Hifil Imperfect		
	Strong Verb	**I-Guttural**
3 m s	יַמְשִׁיל	יַעֲמִיד

Nifal Perfect		
	Strong Verb	**I-Guttural**
3 m s	נִמְשַׁל	נֶעֱמַד

iii) The I-Guttural Hofal stem contains the combination of vowels (ֳ �) in the first and second root consonants for all forms (Perfect, Imperfect, Infinitive, & Participle).

Hofal Perfect		
	Strong Verb	**I-Guttural**
3 m s	הָמְשַׁל	הָעֳמַד

3. **The I-Guttural containing vocalic afformatives involving two vocal shevas.**
Two vocal shaves cannot stand together within a word, so the first vowel is changed to a full vowel, and a compound sheva is changed to its corresponding short vowel [e.g., (ֱ) turns to (ֶ) ; (ֳ) turns to (ֳ) ; (ֲ) turns to (�ַ)].

Nifal Perfect 3fs	נֶעֱמְדָה	→	נֶעֶמְדָה
Hofal Perfect 3fs	הָעֳמְדָה	→	הָעָמְדָה
Hofal Imperfect 2fs	תָּעֳמְדִי	→	תָּעָמְדִי

Practice
- I. Memorize the vocabulary
- II. What is a weak verb?
- III. Memorize the three rules of gutturals

Chapter Twenty-Four

Second Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

אַחַר	behind, after	מִנְחָה	offering, gift
אֹיֵב	enemy	נָחַל	to take possession, inherit
בָּחַן	to test	[נחם]	to be sorry, have compassion, repent
בָּעַר	to burn	צָחַק	to laugh
בָּקָר	herd, cattle	צָעַק	to cry out
זֶבַח	sacrifice	שָׂחַק	to laugh, jest
מִגְדָּל	tower, fortress	שָׁחַט	to kill, slaughter
[מהר]	to hasten		

Weak Verb Designations						
	III	**II**	**I**	← Modern designation	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	עַ	פֶּ	← Traditional		
1	ד	מ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	**ל**	**א**	**שֶׁ**	**'Ayin Guttural**	**II - Guttural**	**Guttural in 2nd root position**
3	ח	ל	שְׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פ	נ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	ו	שָ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שָׁ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

Second Guttural Verbs

A Second Guttural verb designated as 'Ayin Guttural or II-Guttural is one whose second consonant is one of the gutturals: א, ה, ח, ע, or ר. Examples where the second root consonant is a guttural are:

2ˢᵗ Root Consonant	Word	
א	מָאַס	he refused, rejected
ה	מהר	he made haste
ח	בָּחַן	he tested
ע	בָּעַר	he burned, consumed
ר	פָּרַד	he divided, separated

Rules of Inflection
All the normal rules for gutturals apply to II-Gutturals.

1. *Gutturals cannot be doubled*. Since gutturals do not possess a dagesh forte they require lengthening of the preceding vowel.
   a. *Gutturals א, ר and ע*. When א and ר (and occasionally ע) appear in the second root consonant of the verb, the proceding vowel must be lengthened. The rules are again given as follows:
      o Patach (ַ) is lengthened to Qamets (ָ).
      o Hireq (ִ) is lengthened to Tsere (ֵ).
      o Qibbuts (ֻ) is lengthed to Holem (ֹ).
   b. *Gutturals ה, ח and ע*. When ה, ח and ע appear in the second root consonant of the verb, the vowel in the preceding syllable remains short, since ה and ח are considered to be doubled.
2. Gutturals generally take an "a" class vowel.
   a. *Qal*. The Qal imperfect and imperative forms would normally have a Holem as the stem vowel, but with the II-Guttural it has the "a" class Patach instead.

   That is: יִבְחַר not יִבְחֹר

   b. *Pi'el*. Pi'el perfect 3ms forms normally take a Tsere in the second stem vowel, but II-Guttural verbs take a Patach.

   That is: בֵּרֵךְ not בֵּרַךְ

3. Gutturals normally take compound shevas.
   a.   A vocal sheva normally stands beneath the middle root consonant, however, the middle root guttural will take a hatef-patach (ֲ).

Practice
   I. Memorize the vocabulary
  II. What is a weak verb?
 III. Memorize the three rules of gutturals

Chapter Twenty-Five

Third Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

בָּלַע	to swallow, be consumed	פָּגַע	to meet, intercede
בָּמָה	high place (f)	פָּתַח	to open
בָּקַע	to split open	קֵץ	end
גָּבַה	to be high, proud	קָרַע	to tare
זָרַע	to sow	רָצַח	to kill
כָּרַע	to knell, bow down	שֻׁלְחָן	table
מָשַׁח	to anoint	שֶׁמֶשׁ	sun
סָלַח	to forgive	תּוֹלְדוֹת	generations (f)

Weak Verb Designations					
	III	**II**	**I**	← **Modern designation**	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	עַ	פֶּ	← **Traditional**		
1	ד	מ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שֶׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	ל	שֶׁ	**Lamed Guttural**	**III - Guttural**	**Guttural in 3rd root position**
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פ	נָ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	ו	שָׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שׁ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

Third Guttural Weak Verbs

A Third Guttural verb designated as Lamed Guttural or III-Guttural is one whose third or final root consonant is one of the *limited* gutturals: ה, ח, or ע. Final א, ה, or ר do not act as gutturals when placed in the final root consonant.   Examples where the third root consonant is a guttural are:

3rd Root Consonant	Word	
ה	גָּבַה	to be high, exalted
ח	בָּטַח	to trust
ע	זָרַע	to sow

Rules of Inflection
The III-Guttural has the following distinct characteristics.

1. When a III-Guttural verb has no suffix attached, the final guttural ה, ח, or ע, must be preceded by either a Patach (ַ) or a Patach-Furtive[63].
   a. When a strong verb has a Patach or Qamets as its third root stem vowel, the III-Guttural will likewise contain a Patach or Qamets.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Nif. Perf. 3ms	נִמְשַׁל	נִשְׁמַע
Pu'al Part. ms	מְמֻשָּׁל	מְשֻׁמָּע

   b. When the perfect, imperfect, imperative, or infinitive construct of the strong verb has a third root stem vowel which is not of the "a" class, the vowel is changed to a Patach. This applies to all stems except the Hif'il.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Qal Impv. 2ms	מְשֹׁל	שְׁמַע
Pi'el Perf. 3ms	מִשֵּׁל	שִׁמַּע
Hitpa'el Perf. 3ms	הִתְמַשֵּׁל	הִשְׁתַּמַּע

---

[63] A Patach Furtive is not a full vowel and has a short "a" sound. The vowel has a hurried sound and is raised in the transliteration as in רָקִיעַ *raqi^{a}*.

c. When the III-Guttural verb contains �ִי , וֹ or וּ as the third root stem vowel, the unchangeably long vowel remains but a Patach Furtive is inserted between this vowel and the final guttural. This rule applies to the Qal infinitive absolute, Qal passive participle ms, and all Hif'il forms.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Qal Inf. Abs.	מָשׁוֹל	שָׁמוֹעַ
Qal Pas. Part. ms	מָשׁוּל	שָׁמוּעַ
Hif. Perf. 3ms	הִמְשִׁיל	הִשְׁמִיעַ

d. Dr.Kelley has remarked that although Holem and Tsere are not usually considered to be unchangeably long vowels, they function as such in certain forms of III-Guttural verbs.[64] The following rule applies:
   i)   In all forms, a Patach Futive is inserted between the stem vowel and the final guttural.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Qal Inf. Abs.	מְשֹׁל	שְׁמֹעַ
Qal Act. Part. ms	מֹשֵׁל	שֹׁמֵעַ
Hithpa'el Part. ms	מִתְמַשֵּׁל	מִשְׁתַּמֵּעַ

2. When suffixes are added to III-Guttural verbs, the forms are pointed like their strong verb counterparts.
   a.   The third root stem vowel before all נָה suffixes are Patach.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Qal Impf 3fp, 2fp	תִּמְשֹׁלְנָה	תִּשְׁמַעְנָה

   b.   For 2 fs forms of perfects in all stems, a silent sheva stands beneath the final root consonant which is replaced with a Patach.

	Strong verb	**III-Guttural**
Qal Perf 2fs	מָשַׁלְתְּ	שָׁמַעַתְּ

Practice
   I.   Memorize the vocabulary
   II. What is a weak verb?
   III. Memorize the two rules of III-Gutturals

---

[64] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p.265

Third Alef Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

אַמָּה	cubit (f)	עֲשָׂרָה	ten (f)
חבא	to hide	צְדָקָת	righteousness, just (f)
חָנָה	to encamp	צָמֵא	to be thirsty
יָרָה	to teach	צָפָה	to keep, watch
כְּלִי	tool, weapon, vessel	קָבַץ	to collect, gather
כָּסָה	to cover,conceal	קָנָה	to take, possess
נבא	to prophesy	שׁחה	to bow down, worship
סָבִיב	around, surrounding	שׁחת	to destroy, corrupt

Weak Verb Designations					
	III ל	**II** עַ	**I** פֶּ	← Modern designation ← Traditional	**Modern**	**Description**
1	ד	מ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שְׁ	ʻAyin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	ל	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe ʻAlef	I – ʻAlef	ʻAlef in 1st root position
5	**א**	**צָ**	**מָ**	**Lamed ʻAlef**	**III- ʻAlef**	**ʻAlef in 3rd root position**
6	ה	נ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פ	נָ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	ו	שׁ	ʻAyin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שׁ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סַ	Double ʻAyin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

III-Alef Guttural Weak Verbs

Third Alef verbs are designated as Lamed-Alef or III-Alef and are verbs whose final consonant is an alef (א). Examples where the third consonant is א are:

בָּרָא	to create
קָרָא	to call
רָפָא	to heal

Rules of Inflection
The III-Alef verb has the following distinct characteristics.

1. Any syllable that ends with א becomes an open syllable and must have a long vowel.[65] In this case, the stem vowel Patach (ַ) is lengened to a Qamets (ָ).

	Strong verb	III-Alef
Qal Perfect 3ms	מָשַׁל	מָצָא

2. When a BeGaD KeFaT (ב, ג, ד, כ, פ, ת) letter is placed after an א in a III-Alef verb it looses its dagesh lene.

	Strong verb	III-Alef
Qal Perfect 2ms	מָשַׁלְתָּ	מָצָאתָ

3. Qal Perfect III-Alef verbs contain the Qamets before consonantal suffixes.

	III-Alef
Qal Perfect 2ms	מָצָאתָ
Qal Perfect 2fs	מָצָאת
Qal Perfect 1cs	מָצָאתִי
Qal Perfect 2mp	מְצָאתֶם
Qal Perfect 2fp	מְצָאתֶן
Qal Perfect 1cp	מָצָאנוּ

4. The stem vowel in prefixed perfect verbs in all stems except Qal is Tsere (ֵ).

III-Alef Perfect Verbs			
	Nif'al Perfect	**Pi'el Perfect**	**Pu'al Perfect**	**Hif'il Perfect**
2ms	נִמְצֵאתָ	מִצֵּאתָ	מֻצֵּאתָ	הִמְצֵאתָ

---

[65] Page Kelley, Biblical Hebrew (Grand Rapids:Eerdmans, 1992), p. 275

5. For Qal imperfect verbs in all forms except 3fp and 2fp, the vowel before א is a Qamets.

	Strong verb	**III-Alef**
Qal Imperfect 3ms	יִמְשֹׁל	יִמְצָא

6. The stem vowel before נָה endings is the s^egol (ָ).

III-Alef נָה suffix Verbs				
	Qal	**Nif'al**	**Pi'el**	**Hif'il**
Impf 3fp, 2fp	תִּמְצֶאנָה	תִּמָּצֶאנָה	תְּמַצֶּאנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה
Impv 2fs	מְצֶאנָה	הִמָּצֶאנָה	מַצֶּאנָה	הַמְצֶאנָה

7. The feminine singular participle has Tsere as its stem vowel.

III-Alef Fem Sg. Part				
	Qal	**Nif'al**	**Pi'el**	**Hif'il**
ms	מֹצֵא	נִמְצָא	מְמַצֵּא	מַמְצִיא
fs	מֹצֵאת	נִמְצֵאת	מְמַצֵּאת	מַמְצִיאָה

Practice
  I. Memorize the vocabulary
  II. What is a weak verb?
  III. What are the two rules of III-Gutturals?

Chapter Twenty-Seven

Third He Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

מַחֲנֶה	camp	נָדַר	to vow
מַטֶּה	staff, rod, branch, tribe	נָטַע	to plant
מַעֲשֶׂה	work, deed	נָטַשׁ	to leave, forsake
מִשְׁפָּחָה	family	נָסַע	to set out, depart
נָגַף	to strike	נָצַר	to watch, guard
נָדַח	to drive out, banish	עֹלָה	whole burnt offering

Weak Verb Designations						
	III	**II**	**I**	← Modern designation	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	עַ	פְּ	← Traditional		
1	ד	מַ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שַׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לַ	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	**ה**	**נָ**	**בָּ**	**Lamed He**	**III - He**	**He in 3rd root position**
7	ל	פַּ	נָ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	ו	שָׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שָׁ	יְ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

III-He Guttural Weak Verbs

Third He verbs are designated as Lamed-He or III-He and are verbs whose final consonant is a He (ה). Examples of III-He verbs whose third consonant is ה are:

<div dir="rtl">

בָּכָה	to weep
בָּנָה	to build
פָּדָה	to redeem

</div>

Rules of Inflection

The III-He verb has the following distinct characteristics[66].

    A. III-He verbs without afformatives.

        1. All perfect verbs without suffixes end with הָ (qamets + he).

        2. All imperfect verbs without suffixes end with הֶ (sᵉgol + he).

        3. All imperative verbs without suffixes end with הֵ (tsere + he).

        4. All infinitive construct verbs drop the final ה together with the vowel that precedes it replacing them with וֹת (holem-vav + tav).

        5. Infinitive absolute verbs end with הֹ (holem + he) or הֵ (tsere + he).

        6. Masculine singular participles ending with הֶ (sᵉgol + he), are changed to הֵ (tsere + he) in the construct state.

    B. III-He verbs with afformatives.

        1. The perfect 3 fs in all stems of the III-He verbs is formed by substituting ת for the final ה of the verb root and adding הָ, (the 3 fs suffix).

Qal	בָּנְתָה	→	בָּנְתָה

        2. All other forms with vocalic suffixes are shortened by dropping the ה together with the vowel or vocal sheva that preceeds it.

Qal Perf 3 cp	בָּנְהוּ	→	בָּנוּ

    C. III-He verbs with consonantal afformatives drop ה and substitute י in its place. The result is a diphthong.

        1. For perfects in all active stems, יִ (hireq-yod) is used.

	Qal	Piel	Hifil
Perf 2 mpl	בְּנִיתֶם	בִּנִּיתֶם	הִבְנִיתֶם

        2. For perfect consonantal suffixes in all passive stems, יֵ (sere-yod) is used.

---

[66] This section mostly adapted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans,1992)

	Nifal	Pual	Hofal
Perf 2 mpl	נִבְנֵיתֶם	בֻּנֵּיתֶם	הָבְנֵיתֶם

3. For imperfects and imperative consonantal suffixes in all stems, ֶי (sᵉgol-yod) is used.

	Qal	Nifal	Hifil
Impv 2 fpl	בְּנֶינָה	הִבָּנֶינָה	הַבְנֶינָה

Practice
  I.   Memorize the vocabulary
  II. What is a weak verb?
  III. What are the two rules of III-Gutturals?

Chapter Twenty-Eight

First Nun Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

גּוּר	to sojourn	[נסה]	[Pi.] to test, try
חַיִל	strength, wealth, army	[נקה]	to be clean, innocent, guiltless
[נבט]	[Hif.] to see, look upon	[נקם]	to avenge, take vengeance
[נהל]	[Pi.] to lead, guide	[נצב]	[Nif.] to take a stand, set
נַחֲלָה	possession, inheritance (f)	[נשׂג]	[Hif.] to reach, attain
נָזָה	to spatter, sprinkle	נָתַץ	to pull down, break down

Weak Verb Designations					
	III	**II**	**I**	← **Modern designation**	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	עַ	פַּ	← **Traditional**		
1	ד	מ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שֶׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	ל	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נָ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	**ל**	**פָ**	**נָ**	**Pe Nun**	**I - Nun**	**Nun in 1st root position**
8	ב	ו	שׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שֶׁ	יָ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

I-Nun Guttural Weak Verbs

First Nun verbs are designated as Pe-Nun or I-Nun and are verbs whose initial consonant is Nun (נ). Examples of I-Nun verbs whose initial consonant is נ are:

נָגַשׁ	to draw near
נָפַל	to fall
נָתַךְ	to pour out

Rules of Inflection

Page Kelley identifies the following rules concering the I-Nun verb [67].

    A. When נ is the final consonant in a syllable other than the last syllable of the word, it is assimilated into the following consonant using the dagesh forte.

Qal impf 3ms	נָפַל	→	יִפֹּל

    B. However, if the following consonant is a guttural, and therefore cannot be doubled, נ stands as an unassimilated consonant.

Qal impf 3ms	נָחַל	→	יִנְחַל

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary
    II. What is a weak verb?
    III. What are the two rules of I-Nun Gutturals?

---

[67] This section mostly adapted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans,1992)

Chapter Twenty-Nine

Second Vav/Yod Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

גִּיל	to rejoice	נוּס	to flee
דִּין	to judge	נוּעַ	to quiver, stagger, tremble
חוּל/חִיל	to whirl, dance	עוּר	to arouse oneself
לוּן/לִין	to lodge, pass the night, abide	פּוּץ	to be scattered
מוּל	to circumcise	רוּץ	to run
נוּחַ	to rest	רִיב	to strive, contend

Weak Verb Designations					
	III ל	**II** עַ	**I** פֶּ	← **Modern designation** ← **Traditional**	**Modern**	**Description**
1	ד	מֵ	עֲ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שָׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לַ	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נְ	בְּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פַ	נְ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	וּ	שֵׁ	**'Ayin Vav or Yod**	**II – Vav or Yod**	**II – Vav/Yod**
9	ב	שַׁ	יְ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

II-Vav/Yod Guttural Weak Verbs

Second vav and yod verbs are designated as 'Ayin Vav/Yod or II-Vav/II-Yod and are verbs whose second consonant is either a Vav (ו) or a Yod (י)[68]. Examples of II-Vav/II-Yod verbs whose second consonant is ו are:

1. II-Vav verbs using וּ as middle vowel.

גּוּר	To sojourn
מוּת	To die
קוּם	To arise, stand, establish

2. II-Vav verbs using וֹ as middle vowel.

בּוֹא	To come, go, enter
בּוֹשׁ	To be ashamed

3. II-Yod verbs using ִי as middle vowel.

בִּין	To discern
רִיב	To strive
שִׁית	To put, place, set

4. II-Yod verbs using ִי or וּ as middle vowel.

חוּל/חִיל	To whirl, dance
לוּן/לִין	To lodge, pass the night
שׂוֹם/שִׂים	To put, place, appoint

Rules of Inflection
Page Kelley identifies the following rules concering the II-Vav/II-Yod verb [69].
When Yod or Vav is the middle consonant in a syllable the following inflection takes place:

---

[68] As Page Kelley notes, these weak verbs are also referred to as "Middle Vowel verbs," or "Hollow verbs."
[69] This section mostly adapted from Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans,1992)

	Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative
	Qal		Qal		Qal
	Simple active		Simple active		Simple active
3 ms	קָם	3 ms	יָקוּם		
3 fs	קָמָה	3 fs	תָּקוּם		
2 ms	קַמְתָּ	2 ms	תָּקוּם	2ms	קוּם
2 fs	קַמְתְּ	2 fs	תָּקוּמִי	2fs	קוּמִי
1 cs	קַמְתִּי	1 cs	אָקוּם		
3 cp	קָמוּ	3 mp	יָקוּמוּ		
		3fp	תְּקוּמֶינָה		
2 mp	קַמְתֶּם	2 mp	תָּקוּמוּ	2mp	קוּמוּ
2 fp	קַמְתֶּן	2 fp	תְּקוּמֶינָה	2fp	קֹמְנָה
1 cp	קַמְנוּ	1 cp	נָקוּם		
Qal Infinitive					
Qal Infinitive Construct			קוּם		
Infinitive Absolute			קוֹם		
Qal Active Participle					
ms			קָם		
mp			קָמִים		
fs			קָמָה		
fp			קָמוֹת		

Chapter Thirty

First Vav or First Yod Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

שִׁיר	to sing	יָגַע	to labor, grow weary
שִׁית	to put, place, set	[ידה]	to praise (Hif)
כָּשַׁל	to stumble	יָטַב	to do well
לָכַד	to seize, capture	[יכח]	to reprove, rebuke (Hif)
שָׁבַת	to cease, rest	יָנַק	to suck
יָבֵשׁ	to dry up	יָסַד	to found, establish

Weak Verb Designations					
	III	**II**	**I**	**← Modern designation**	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	עַ	פֶּ	**← Traditional**		
1	ד	מ	עָ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שָׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לָ	שָׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מָ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נָ	בָּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פַּ	נָ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	וֹ	שׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שַׁ	יְ	**Pe Vav or Yod**	**I - Vav or Yod**	**I – Vav/Yod**
10	ב	ב	סָ	Double 'Ayin	Geminate	Doubled 2nd root position

I-Vav/Yod Guttural Weak Verbs

First Vav and First Yod verbs are designated as Pe Vav/Yod or I-Vav/I-Yod and are verbs whose root consonant is a Yod (י). In their root forms I-Vav and I-Yod verbs look the same. That is, the I-Vav verb יָבֵשׁ "to dry up," and the I-Yod verb יָטַב "to be good," look the same in their Qal perfect 3ms forms. However, they differ in form in other stems[70]. Do not be confused or worry about identifying whether this form of verb is a I-Vav or I-Yod weak verb, they are listed here in order to complete the classification. A great amount of time should not be focused upon the details of this group. For the first year Hebrew student, simply know they exist, and move on. It is imporant for this group to recall the basic rule of gutturals for Yod and Vav:

i)   When the vowel before the final guttural is unchangeably long, i.e., יִ ,יִ , וֹ, וּ , a Patach (ַ) must be inserted between this vowel and the final guttural.

1. I-Vav verbs have a yod as their initial root consonant in the Qal stem and a Patach as their stem vowel in the imperfect. Examples of I-Vav verbs are:

יָבֵשׁ	to dry
יָרֵא	to fear
יָשֵׁן	to sleep

2. I-Yod verbs are very limited. Dr. Kelley says, "A true Pe Yod verb is one that retains the yod as its initial root consonant in all forms. In forms without prefixes, yod is retained as a regular consonant. In forms with prefixes, it is retained either as hireq-yod (in the Qal imperfect), or as sere-yod (throughtout the Hif'il stem)." Examples are:

יָטַב	to be good
יָלַל	to wail
יָשַׁר	to be straight, upright

Rules of Inflection
When Yod or Vav is the initial consonant in a syllable the following inflection takes place:

	Qal	Qal	Niphʿal	Hifʿil	Hofʿal	Qal	Hifʿil
	Simple	Simple	Simple	Causative	Causative	Simple	Causative

---

[70] Page Kelley, *Biblical Hebrew* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1992), p. 338

	active	active	passive/ reflexive	active	passive	active	active
				Perfect			
3 ms	יָשַׁב	יָרֵא	נוֹשַׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יָטַב	הֵיטִיב
3 fs	יָשְׁבָה	יָרְאָה	נוֹשְׁבָה	הוֹשִׁיבָה	הוּשְׁבָה	יָטְבָה	הֵיטִיבָה
2 ms	יָשַׁבְתָּ	יָרֵאתָ	נוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוּשַׁבְתָּ	יָטַבְתָּ	הֵיטַבְתָּ
2 fs	יָשַׁבְתְּ	יָרֵאת	נוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוּשַׁבְתְּ	יָטַבְתְּ	הֵיטַבְתְּ
1 cs	יָשַׁבְתִּי	יָרֵאתִי	נוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוּשַׁבְתִּי	יָטַבְתִּי	הֵיטַבְתִּי
3 cp	יָשְׁבוּ	יָרְאוּ	נוֹשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הוּשְׁבוּ	יָטְבוּ	הֵיטִיבוּ
2 mp	יְשַׁבְתֶּם	יְרֵאתֶם	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוּשַׁבְתֶּם	יְטַבְתֶּם	הֵיטַבְתֶּם
2 fp	יְשַׁבְתֶּן	יְרֵאתֶן	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוּשַׁבְתֶּן	יְטַבְתֶּן	הֵיטַבְתֶּן
1 cp	יָשַׁבְנוּ	יָרֵאנוּ	נוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוּשַׁבְנוּ	יָטַבְנוּ	הֵיטַבְנוּ
				Imperfect			
3 ms	יֵשֵׁב	יִירָא	יִוָּשֵׁב	יוֹשִׁיב	יוּשַׁב	יִיטַב	יֵיטִיב
3 fs	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּירָא	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
2 ms	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּירָא	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
2 fs	תֵּשְׁבִי	תִּירְאִי	תִּוָּשְׁבִי	תּוֹשִׁיבִי	תּוּשְׁבִי	תִּיטְבִי	תֵּיטִיבִי
1 cs	אֵשֵׁב	אִירָא	אִוָּשֵׁב	אוֹשִׁיב	אוּשַׁב	אִיטַב	אֵיטִיב
3 mp	יֵשְׁבוּ	יִירְאוּ	יִוָּשְׁבוּ	יוֹשִׁיבוּ	יוּשְׁבוּ	יִיטְבוּ	יֵיטִיבוּ
3 fp	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירֶאנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה
2 mp	תֵּשְׁבוּ	תִּירְאוּ	תִּוָּשְׁבוּ	תּוֹשִׁיבוּ	תּוּשְׁבוּ	תִּיטְבוּ	תֵּיטִיבוּ
2 fp	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירֶאנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה
1 cp	נֵשֵׁב	נִירָא	נִוָּשֵׁב	נוֹשִׁיב	נוּשַׁב	נִיטַב	נֵיטִיב

	Qal	Qal	Nipheal	Hifeil	Hofeal	Qal	Hifeil
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
				Imperative			
2 ms	שֵׁב	יְרָא	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשֵׁב		יְטַב	הֵיטֵב
2 fs	שְׁבִי	יִרְאִי	הִוָּשְׁבִי	הוֹשִׁיבִי		יִטְבִי	הֵיטִיבִי
2 mp	שְׁבוּ	יִרְאוּ	הִוָּשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ		יִטְבוּ	הֵיטִיבוּ
2 fp	שֵׁבְנָה	יְרֶאנָה	הִוָּשַׁבְנָה	הוֹשֵׁבְנָה		יְטַבְנָה	הֵיטֵבְנָה

Qal	Qal	Nipheal	Hifeil	Hofeal	Qal	Hifeil
Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
			Infinitive Construct			
שֶׁבֶת	יְרָאָה	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יְטֹב	הֵיטִיב
			Infinitive Absolute			
יָשׁוֹב		הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשֵׁב	הוּשֵׁב	יָטוֹב	הֵיטֵב

Chapter Thirty-One

Geminate Guttural Weak Verbs

Vocabulary

בְּזַז	to plunder, destroy	צְרַר	to be in distress
בְּלַל	to mix, confound	רְנַן	to shout for joy
דְּמַם	to be silent	שְׁדַד	to devastate
חְתַת	to be shattered, dismayed	שְׁמַם	to be appalled, devastated
מְדַד	to measure	תְּמַם	to be finished, completed
נְדַד	to flee	גִּבּוֹר	hero, mighty one

Weak Verb Designations					
	III	**II**	**I**	**← Modern designation**	**Modern**	**Description**
	ל	**ע**	**פ**	**← Traditional**		
1	ד	מַ	עְ	Pe Guttural	I - Guttural	Guttural in 1st root position
2	ל	א	שְׁ	'Ayin Guttural	II - Guttural	Guttural in 2nd root position
3	ח	לְ	שְׁ	Lamed Guttural	III - Guttural	Guttural in 3rd root position
4	ל	כ	אָ	Pe 'Alef	I – 'Alef	'Alef in 1st root position
5	א	צָ	מְ	Lamed 'Alef	III- 'Alef	'Alef in 3rd root position
6	ה	נְ	בְּ	Lamed He	III - He	He in 3rd root position
7	ל	פַ	נְ	Pe Nun	I - Nun	Nun in 1st root position
8	ב	ו	שׁ	'Ayin Vav or Yod	II – Vav or Yod	II – Vav/Yod
9	ב	שְׁ	יְ	Pe Vav or Yod	I - Vav or Yod	I – Vav/Yod
10	**ב**	**ב**	**סָ**	**Double 'Ayin**	**Geminate**	**Doubled 2nd root position**

Geminate Guttural Weak Verbs

Geminate weak verbs are also designated as Double ʿAyin and are verbs whose second root consonant has been duplicated.

1. Examples of Geminate verbs are:

סָבַב	to surround
קָלַל	to be swift
תָּמַם	to finish

2. Many Geminate verbs are written as monosyllabic. The verbs above are often found as:

סָבַב	→	סַב
קָלַל	→	קַל
תָּמַם	→	תַּם

Rules of Inflection

The Geminate verbs are some of the most complex as many are inflected as strong verbs and many are transitive verbs which have taken on defective forms.

1. In most stems, the second consonant assimilates into the third and a daghesh forte is added to the root consonant.
2. A Holem Vav is added as a connecting vowel between the root and its prefix.

3ms	סָבַב	he surrounded
2ms	סַבּוֹתָ	you surrounded

APPENDIX

VERB CHART – STRONG VERB

	Qal	Niphʿal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hithpaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	שָׁמַר	נִשְׁמַר	שִׁמֵּר	שֻׁמַּר	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	הִשְׁמִיר	הָשְׁמַר
3 fs	שָׁמְרָה	נִשְׁמְרָה	שִׁמְּרָה	שֻׁמְּרָה	הִשְׁתַּמְּרָה	הִשְׁמִירָה	הָשְׁמְרָה
2 ms	שָׁמַרְתָּ	נִשְׁמַרְתָּ	שִׁמַּרְתָּ	שֻׁמַּרְתָּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתָּ	הִשְׁמַרְתָּ	הָשְׁמַרְתָּ
2 fs	שָׁמַרְתְּ	נִשְׁמַרְתְּ	שִׁמַּרְתְּ	שֻׁמַּרְתְּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתְּ	הִשְׁמַרְתְּ	הָשְׁמַרְתְּ
1 cs	שָׁמַרְתִּי	נִשְׁמַרְתִּי	שִׁמַּרְתִּי	שֻׁמַּרְתִּי	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתִּי	הִשְׁמַרְתִּי	הָשְׁמַרְתִּי
3 cp	שָׁמְרוּ	נִשְׁמְרוּ	שִׁמְּרוּ	שֻׁמְּרוּ	הִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	הִשְׁמִירוּ	הָשְׁמְרוּ
2 mp	שְׁמַרְתֶּם	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	שִׁמַּרְתֶּם	שֻׁמַּרְתֶּם	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתֶּם	הִשְׁמַרְתֶּם	הָשְׁמַרְתֶּם
2 fp	שְׁמַרְתֶּן	נִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	שִׁמַּרְתֶּן	שֻׁמַּרְתֶּן	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְתֶּן	הִשְׁמַרְתֶּן	הָשְׁמַרְתֶּן
1 cp	שָׁמַרְנוּ	נִשְׁמַרְנוּ	שִׁמַּרְנוּ	שֻׁמַּרְנוּ	הִשְׁתַּמַּרְנוּ	הִשְׁמַרְנוּ	הָשְׁמַרְנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִשְׁמֹר	יִשָּׁמֵר	יְשַׁמֵּר	יְשֻׁמַּר	יִשְׁתַּמֵּר	יַשְׁמִיר	יָשְׁמַר
3 fs	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשָּׁמֵר	תְּשַׁמֵּר	תְּשֻׁמַּר	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּר	תַּשְׁמִיר	תָּשְׁמַר
2 ms	תִּשְׁמֹר	תִּשָּׁמֵר	תְּשַׁמֵּר	תְּשֻׁמַּר	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּר	תַּשְׁמִיר	תָּשְׁמַר
2 fs	תִּשְׁמְרִי	תִּשָּׁמְרִי	תְּשַׁמְּרִי	תְּשֻׁמְּרִי	תִּשְׁתַּמְּרִי	תַּשְׁמִירִי	תָּשְׁמְרִי
1 cs	אֶשְׁמֹר	אֶשָּׁמֵר	אֲשַׁמֵּר	אֲשֻׁמַּר	אֶשְׁתַּמֵּר	אַשְׁמִיר	אָשְׁמַר
3 mp	יִשְׁמְרוּ	יִשָּׁמְרוּ	יְשַׁמְּרוּ	יְשֻׁמְּרוּ	יִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	יַשְׁמִירוּ	יָשְׁמְרוּ
3 fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשָּׁמַרְנָה	תְּשַׁמֵּרְנָה	תְּשֻׁמַּרְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	תַּשְׁמֵרְנָה	תָּשְׁמַרְנָה
2 mp	תִּשְׁמְרוּ	תִּשָּׁמְרוּ	תְּשַׁמְּרוּ	תְּשֻׁמְּרוּ	תִּשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	תַּשְׁמִירוּ	תָּשְׁמְרוּ
2 fp	תִּשְׁמֹרְנָה	תִּשָּׁמַרְנָה	תְּשַׁמֵּרְנָה	תְּשֻׁמַּרְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	תַּשְׁמֵרְנָה	תָּשְׁמַרְנָה
1 cp	נִשְׁמֹר	נִשָּׁמֵר	נְשַׁמֵּר	נְשֻׁמַּר	נִשְׁתַּמֵּר	נַשְׁמִיר	נָשְׁמַר

	Qal	Niph'al	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hitphaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	שְׁמֹר	הִשָּׁמֵר	שַׁמֵּר		הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	הַשְׁמֵר	
2 fs	שִׁמְרִי	הִשָּׁמְרִי	שַׁמְּרִי		הִשְׁתַּמְּרִי	הַשְׁמִירִי	
2 mp	שִׁמְרוּ	הִשָּׁמְרוּ	שַׁמְּרוּ		הִשְׁתַּמְּרוּ	הַשְׁמִירוּ	
2 fp	שְׁמֹרְנָה	הִשָּׁמַרְנָה	שַׁמֵּרְנָה		הִשְׁתַּמֵּרְנָה	הַשְׁמֵרְנָה	

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct							
	שְׁמֹר	הִשָּׁמֵר	שַׁמֵּר	שֻׁמַּר	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	הַשְׁמִיר	הָשְׁמַר
Infinitive Absolute							
	שָׁמוֹר	הִשָּׁמֹר	שַׁמֵּר	שֻׁמֹּר	הִשְׁתַּמֵּר	הַשְׁמֵר	הָשְׁמֵר
		Alt. נִשְׁמֹר	Alt. שַׁמֹּר				

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	שֹׁמֵר		מְשַׁמֵּר		מִשְׁתַּמֵּר	מַשְׁמִיר	
mp	שֹׁמְרִים		מְשַׁמְּרִים		מִשְׁתַּמְּרִים	מַשְׁמִירִים	
fs	שֹׁמְרָה		מְשַׁמְּרָה		מִשְׁתַּמְּרָה	מַשְׁמִירָה	
fp	שֹׁמְרוֹת		מְשַׁמְּרוֹת		מִשְׁתַּמְּרוֹת	מַשְׁמִירוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	שָׁמוּר	נִשְׁמָר		מְשֻׁמָּר			מָשְׁמָר
mp	שְׁמוּרִים	נִשְׁמָרִים		מְשֻׁמָּרִים			מָשְׁמָרִים
fs	שְׁמוּרָה	נִשְׁמָרָה		מְשֻׁמָּרָה			מָשְׁמָרָה
fp	שְׁמוּרוֹת	נִשְׁמָרוֹת		מְשֻׁמָּרוֹת			מָשְׁמָרוֹת

VERB CHART 2 – I-Guttural [Pe Guttural (פ)]

	Qal	Qal	Niph'al	Hiphʿil	Hophʿal
	Simple active	Simple Stative	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect					
3 ms	עָמַד	חָזַק	נֶעֱמַד	הֶעֱמִיד	הָעֳמַד
3 fs	עָמְדָה	חָזְקָה	נֶעֶמְדָה	הֶעֱמִידָה	הָעֳמְדָה
2 ms	עָמַדְתָּ	חָזַקְתָּ	נֶעֱמַדְתָּ	הֶעֱמַדְתָּ	הָעֳמַדְתָּ
2 fs	עָמַדְתְּ	חָזַקְתְּ	נֶעֱמַדְתְּ	הֶעֱמַדְתְּ	הָעֳמַדְתְּ
1 cs	עָמַדְתִּי	חָזַקְתִּי	נֶעֱמַדְתִּי	הֶעֱמַדְתִּי	הָעֳמַדְתִּי
3 cp	עָמְדוּ	חָזְקוּ	נֶעֶמְדוּ	הֶעֱמִידוּ	הָעֳמְדוּ
2 mp	עֲמַדְתֶּם	חֲזַקְתֶּם	נֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	הָעֳמַדְתֶּם
2 fp	עֲמַדְתֶּן	חֲזַקְתֶּן	נֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	הָעֳמַדְתֶּן
1 cp	עָמַדְנוּ	חָזַקְנוּ	נֶעֱמַדְנוּ	הֶעֱמַדְנוּ	הָעֳמַדְנוּ
Imperfect					
3 ms	יַעֲמֹד	יֶחֱזַק	יֵעָמֵד	יַעֲמִיד	יָעֳמַד
3 fs	תַּעֲמֹד	תֶּחֱזַק	תֵּעָמֵד	תַּעֲמִיד	תָּעֳמַד
2 ms	תַּעֲמֹד	תֶּחֱזַק	תֵּעָמֵד	תַּעֲמִיד	תָּעֳמַד
2 fs	תַּעַמְדִי	תֶּחֶזְקִי	תֵּעָמְדִי	תַּעֲמִידִי	תָּעֳמְדִי
1 cs	אֶעֱמֹד	אֶחֱזַק	אֵעָמֵד	אַעֲמִיד	אָעֳמַד
3 mp	יַעַמְדוּ	יֶחֶזְקוּ	יֵעָמְדוּ	יַעֲמִידוּ	יָעֳמְדוּ
3 fp	תַּעֲמֹדְנָה	תֶּחֱזַקְנָה	תֵּעָמַדְנָה	תַּעֲמֵדְנָה	תָּעֳמַדְנָה
2 mp	תַּעַמְדוּ	תֶּחֶזְקוּ	תֵּעָמְדוּ	תַּעֲמִידוּ	תָּעֳמְדוּ
2 fp	תַּעֲמֹדְנָה	תֶּחֱזַקְנָה	תֵּעָמַדְנָה	תַּעֲמֵדְנָה	תָּעֳמַדְנָה
1 cp	נַעֲמֹד	נֶחֱזַק	נֵעָמֵד	נַעֲמִיד	נָעֳמַד

	Qal (Active)	Qal (Stative)	Niph'al	Hifʿil
	Simple active	Simple Stative	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active
Imperative				
2 ms	עֲמֹד	חֲזַק	הֵעָמֵד	הַעֲמֵד
2 fs	עִמְדִי	חִזְקִי	הֵעָמְדִי	הַעֲמִידִי
2 mp	עִמְדוּ	חִזְקוּ	הֵעָמְדוּ	הַעֲמִידוּ
2 fp	עֲמֹדְנָה	חֲזַקְנָה	הֵעָמַדְנָה	הַעֲמֵדְנָה

Qal	Niph'al	Hif'il	Hof'al
Simple active	Simple passive/reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct			
עֲמֹד	הֵעָמֵד	הַעֲמִיד	
Infinitive Absolute			
עָמוֹד	נַעֲמֹד	הַעֲמֵד	הָעֲמֵד

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	עֹמֵד					מַעֲמִיד	
mp	עֹמְדִים					מַעֲמִידִים	
fs	עֹמֶדֶת					מַעֲמִידָה	
fp	עֹמְדוֹת					מַעֲמִידוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	עָמוּד	נֶעֱמָד					מָעֳמָד
mp	עֲמוּדִים	נֶעֱמָדִים					מָעֳמָדִים
fs	עֲמוּדָה	נֶעֱמָדָה					מָעֳמָדָה
fp	עֲמוּדוֹת	נֶעֱמָדוֹת					מָעֳמָדוֹת

VERB CHART 3 – I-'Alef [Pe 'Alef]

	Qal	Qal	
	Simple	Simple	
Perfect			
3 ms	אָכַל	אָמַר	
3 fs	אָכְלָה	אָמְרָה	
2 ms	אָכַלְתָּ	אָמַרְתָּ	
2 fs	אָכַלְתְּ	אָמַרְתְּ	
1 cs	אָכַלְתִּי	אָמַרְתִּי	
3 cp	אָכְלוּ	אָמְרוּ	
2 mp	אֲכַלְתֶּם	אֲמַרְתֶּם	
2 fp	אֲכַלְתֶּן	אֲמַרְתֶּן	
1 cp	אָכַלְנוּ	אָמַרְנוּ	
Imperfect			
3 ms	יֹאכַל	יֹאמַר	
3 fs	תֹּאכַל	תֹּאמַר	
2 ms	תֹּאכַל	תֹּאמַר	
2 fs	תֹּאכְלִי	תֹּאמְרִי	
1 cs	אֹכַל	אֹמַר	
3 mp	יֹאכְלוּ	יֹאמְרוּ	
3 fp	תֹּאכַלְנָה	תֹּאמַרְנָה	
2 mp	תֹּאכְלוּ	תֹּאמְרוּ	
2 fp	תֹּאכַלְנָה	תֹּאמַרְנָה	
1 cp	נֹאכַל	נֹאמַר	

	Qal	Qal
	Simple active	Simple active
Imperative		
2 ms	אֱכֹל	אֱמֹר
2 fs	אִכְלִי	אִמְרִי
2 mp	אִכְלוּ	אִמְרוּ
2 fp	אֲכֹלְנָה	אֱמֹרְנָה

Qal Infinitive Construct	
אֱכֹל	אֱמֹר
Qal Infinitive Absolute	
אָכוֹל	אָמוֹר

Qal Active Participle		
ms	אֹכֵל	אֹמֵר
mp	אֹכְלִים	אֹמְרִים
fs	אֹכְלָה	אֹמְרָה
	אֹכֶלֶת or	אֹמֶרֶת or
fp	אֹכְלוֹת	אֹמְרוֹת

Qal Passive Participle	
ms	אָכוּל
mp	אֲכוּלִים
fs	אֲכוּלָה
fp	אֲכוּלוֹת

VERB CHART 4 – II-Guttural ['Ayin Guttural]

	Qal	Niphʿal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hithpaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	גָּאַל	נִגְאַל	בֵּרֵךְ	בֹּרַךְ	הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הִגְאִיל	הָגְאַל
3 fs	גָּאֲלָה	נִגְאֲלָה	בֵּרְכָה	בֹּרְכָה	הִתְבָּרְכָה	הִגְאִילָה	הָגְאֲלָה
2 ms	גָּאַלְתָּ	נִגְאַלְתָּ	בֵּרַכְתָּ	בֹּרַכְתָּ	הִתְבָּרַכְתָּ	הִגְאַלְתָּ	הָגְאַלְתָּ
2 fs	גָּאַלְתְּ	נִגְאַלְתְּ	בֵּרַכְתְּ	בֹּרַכְתְּ	הִתְבָּרַכְתְּ	הִגְאַלְתְּ	הָגְאַלְתְּ
1 cs	גָּאַלְתִּי	נִגְאַלְתִּי	בֵּרַכְתִּי	בֹּרַכְתִּי	הִתְבָּרַכְתִּי	הִגְאַלְתִּי	הָגְאַלְתִּי
3 cp	גָּאֲלוּ	נִגְאֲלוּ	בֵּרְכוּ	בֹּרְכוּ	הִתְבָּרְכוּ	הִגְאִילוּ	הָגְאֲלוּ
2 mp	גְּאַלְתֶּם	נִגְאַלְתֶּם	בֵּרַכְתֶּם	בֹּרַכְתֶּם	הִתְבָּרַכְתֶּם	הִגְאַלְתֶּם	הָגְאַלְתֶּם
2 fp	גְּאַלְתֶּן	נִגְאַלְתֶּן	בֵּרַכְתֶּן	בֹּרַכְתֶּן	הִתְבָּרַכְתֶּן	הִגְאַלְתֶּן	הָגְאַלְתֶּן
1 cp	גָּאַלְנוּ	נִגְאַלְנוּ	בֵּרַכְנ	בֹּרַכְנוּ	הִתְבָּרַכְנוּ	הִגְאַלְנוּ	הָגְאַלְנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִגְאַל	יִגָּאֵל	יְבָרֵךְ	יְבֹרַךְ	יִתְבָּרֵךְ	יַגְאִיל	יָגְאַל
3 fs	תִּגְאַל	תִּגָּאֵל	תְּבָרֵךְ	תְּבֹרַךְ	תִּתְבָּרֵךְ	תַּגְאִיל	תָּגְאַל
2 ms	תִּגְאַל	תִּגָּאֵל	תְּבָרֵךְ	תְּבֹרַךְ	תִּתְבָּרֵךְ	תַּגְאִיל	תָּגְאַל
2 fs	תִּגְאֲלִי	תִּגָּאֲלִי	תְּבָרְכִי	תְּבֹרְכִי	תִּתְבָּרְכִי	תַּגְאִילִי	תָּגְאֲלִי
1 cs	אֶגְאַל	אֶגָּאֵל	אֲבָרֵךְ	אֲבֹרַךְ	אֶתְבָּרֵךְ	אַגְאִיל	אָגְאַל
3 mp	יִגְאֲלוּ	יִגָּאֲלוּ	יְבָרְכוּ	יְבֹרְכוּ	יִתְבָּרְכוּ	יַגְאִילוּ	יָגְאֲלוּ
3 fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּגָּאַלְנָה	תְּבָרֵכְנָה	תְּבֹרַכְנָה	תִּתְבָּרֵכְנָה	תַּגְאַלְנָה	תָּגְאַלְנָה
2 mp	תִּגְאֲלוּ	תִּגָּאֲלוּ	תְּבָרְכוּ	תְּבֹרְכוּ	תִּתְבָּרְכוּ	תַּגְאִילוּ	תָּגְאֲלוּ
2 fp	תִּגְאַלְנָה	תִּגָּאַלְנָה	תְּבָרֵכְנָה	תְּבֹרַכְנָה	תִּתְבָּרֵכְנָה	תַּגְאַלְנָה	תָּגְאַלְנָה
1 cp	נִגְאַל	נִגָּאֵל	נְבָרֵךְ	נְבֹרַךְ	נִתְבָּרֵךְ	נַגְאִיל	נָגְאַל

	Qal	Niphʾal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hitphaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	גְּאַל	הִגָּאֵל	בָּרֵךְ		הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הַגְאֵל	
2 fs	גַּאֲלִי	הִגָּאֲלִי	בָּרְכִי		הִתְבָּרְכִי	הַגְאִילִי	
2 mp	גַּאֲלוּ	הִגָּאֲלוּ	בָּרְכוּ		הִתְבָּרְכוּ	הַגְאִילוּ	
2 fp	גְּאַלְנָה	הִגָּאַלְנָה	בָּרֵכְנָה		הִתְבָּרֵכְנָה	הַגְאֵלְנָה	

146

Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
Simple active	Simple passive/reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct						
גָּאַל	הִגָּאֵל	בָּרֵךְ	בֹּרַךְ	הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הַגְאִיל	הָגְאַל
Infinitive Absolute						
גָּאוֹל	נִגְאֹל	בָּרֵךְ		הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הַגְאֵל	הָגְאֵל

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	גֹּאֵל		מְבָרֵךְ		מִתְבָּרֵךְ	מַגְאִיל	
mp	גֹּאֲלִים		מְבָרְכִים		מִתְבָּרְכִים	מַגְאִילִים	
fs	גֹּאֲלָה		מְבָרְכָה		מִתְבָּרְכָה	מַגְאִילָה	
fp	גֹּאֲלוֹת		מְבָרְכוֹת		מִתְבָּרְכוֹת	מַגְאִילוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	גָּאוּל	נִגְאָל		מְבֹרָךְ			מֻגְאָל
mp	גְּאוּלִים	נִגְאָלִים		מְבֹרָכִים			מֻגְאָלִים
fs	גְּאוּלָה	נִגְאָלָה		מְבֹרָכָה			מֻגְאָלָה
fp	גְּאוּלוֹת	נִגְאָלוֹת		מְבֹרָכוֹת			מֻגְאָלוֹת

VERB CHART 5 – III-Guttural [Lamed Guttural]

	Qal	Niphʿal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hithpaʿel	Hifˈil	Hofˆal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	שָׁלַח	נִשְׁלַח	שִׁלַּח	בֹּרַךְ	הִתְבָּרַךְ	הִשְׁלִיחַ	הָשְׁלַח
3 fs	שָׁלְחָה	נִשְׁלְחָה	שִׁלְּחָה	בֹּרְכָה	הִתְבָּרְכָה	הִשְׁלִיחָה	הָשְׁלְחָה
2 ms	שָׁלַחְתָּ	נִשְׁלַחְתָּ	שִׁלַּחְתָּ	בֹּרַכְתָּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתָּ	הִשְׁלַחְתָּ	הָשְׁלַחְתָּ
2 fs	שָׁלַחַתְּ	נִשְׁלַחַתְּ	שִׁלַּחַתְּ	בֹּרַכְתְּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחַתְּ	הִשְׁלַחַתְּ	הָשְׁלַחַתְּ
1 cs	שָׁלַחְתִּי	נִשְׁלַחְתִּי	שִׁלַּחְתִּי	בֹּרַכְתִּי	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתִּי	הִשְׁלַחְתִּי	הָשְׁלַחְתִּי
3 cp	שָׁלְחוּ	נִשְׁלְחוּ	שִׁלְּחוּ	בֹּרְכוּ	הִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	הִשְׁלִיחוּ	הָשְׁלְחוּ
2 mp	שְׁלַחְתֶּם	נִשְׁלַחְתֶּם	שִׁלַּחְתֶּם	בֹּרַכְתֶּם	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֶּם	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּם	הָשְׁלַחְתֶּם
2 fp	שְׁלַחְתֶּן	נִשְׁלַחְתֶּן	שִׁלַּחְתֶּן	בֹּרַכְתֶּן	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֶּן	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּן	הָשְׁלַחְתֶּן
1 cp	שָׁלַחְנוּ	נִשְׁלַחְנוּ	שִׁלַּחְנוּ	בֹּרַכְנוּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנוּ	הִשְׁלַחְנוּ	הָשְׁלַחְנ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִשְׁלַח	יִשָּׁלַח	יְשַׁלַּח	יְשֻׁלַּח	יִשְׁתַּלַּח	יַשְׁלִיחַ	יָשְׁלַח
3 fs	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּשָּׁלַח	תְּשַׁלַּח	תְּשֻׁלַּח	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תַּשְׁלִיחַ	תָּשְׁלַח
2 ms	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּשָּׁלַח	תְּשַׁלַּח	תְּשֻׁלַּח	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תַּשְׁלִיחַ	תָּשְׁלַח
2 fs	תִּשְׁלְחִי	תִּשָּׁלְחִי	תְּשַׁלְּחִי	תְּשֻׁלְּחִי	תִּשְׁתַּלְּחִי	תַּשְׁלִיחִי	תָּשְׁלְחִי
1 cs	אֶשְׁלַח	אֶשָּׁלַח	אֲשַׁלַּה	אֲשֻׁלַּח	אֶשְׁתַּלַּח	אַשְׁלִיחַ	אָשְׁלַח
3 mp	יִשְׁלְחוּ	יִשָּׁלְחוּ	יְשַׁלְּחוּ	יְשֻׁלְּחוּ	יִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	יַשְׁלִיחוּ	יָשְׁלְחוּ
3 fp	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּשָּׁלַחְנָה	תְּשַׁלַּחְנָה	תְּשֻׁלַּחְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תַּשְׁלַחְנָה	תָּשְׁלַחְנָה
2 mp	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	תִּשָּׁלְחוּ	תְּשַׁלְּחוּ	תְּשֻׁלְּחוּ	תִּשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	תַּשְׁלִיחוּ	תָּשְׁלְחוּ
2 fp	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּשָּׁלַחְנָה	תְּשַׁלַּחְנָה	תְּשֻׁלַּחְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תַּשְׁלַחְנָה	תָּשְׁלַחְנָה
1 cp	נִשְׁלַח	נִשָּׁלַח	נְשַׁלַּח	נְשֻׁלַּח	נִשְׁתַּלַּח	נַשְׁלִיחַ	נָשְׁלַח

	Qal	Niph’al	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hitphaʿel	Hifˈil	Hofˆal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	שְׁלַח	הִשָּׁלַח	שַׁלַּח		הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הַשְׁתַּלַּח	הָשְׁלַח
2 fs	שִׁלְחִי	הִשָּׁלְחִי	שַׁלְּחִי		שַׁלְּחִי	הִשְׁתַּלְּחִי	הַשְׁלִיחִי
2 mp	שִׁלְחוּ	הִשָּׁלְחוּ	שַׁלְּחוּ		שַׁלְּחוּ	הִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	הַשְׁלִיחוּ
2 fp	שְׁלַחְנָה	הִשָּׁלַחְנָה	שַׁלַּחְנָה		שַׁלַּחְנָה	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	הַשְׁלַחְנָה

Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct						
שְׁלֹחַ	הִשָּׁלַח	שַׁלַּח	שֻׁלַּח	הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הַשְׁלִיחַ	הָשְׁלַח
Infinitive Absolute						
שָׁלוֹחַ	נִשְׁלוֹחַ	שַׁלֵּחַ	שֻׁלַּח	הִשְׁתַּלֵּחַ	הַשְׁלֵחַ	הָשְׁלֵחַ
	הִשָּׁלֵחַ					

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	שֹׁלֵחַ		מְשַׁלֵּחַ		מִשְׁתַּלֵּחַ	מַשְׁלִיחַ	
mp	שֹׁלְחִים		מְשַׁלְּחִים		מִשְׁתַּלְּחִים	מַשְׁלִיחִים	
fs	שֹׁלְחָה		מְשַׁלְּחָה		מִשְׁתַּלְּחָה	מַשְׁלִיחָה	
fp	שֹׁלְחוֹת		מְשַׁלְּחוֹת		מִשְׁתַּלְּחוֹת	מַשְׁלִיחוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	שָׁלוּחַ	נִשְׁלָח		מְשֻׁלָּח			מָשְׁלָח
mp	שְׁלוּחִים	נִשְׁלָחִים		מְשֻׁלָּחִים			מָשְׁלָחִים
fs	שְׁלוּחָה	נִשְׁלָחָה		מְשֻׁלָּחָה			מָשְׁלָחָה
fp	שְׁלוּחוֹת	נִשְׁלָחוֹת		מְשֻׁלָּחוֹת			מָשְׁלָחוֹת

VERB CHART 6 – III-ʿAlef [Lamed ʿAlef]

	Qal	Niphʿal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hithpaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	מָצָא	נִמְצָא	מִצֵּא	מֻצָּא	הִתְמַצֵּא	הִמְצִיא	הֻמְצָא
3 fs	מָצְאָה	נִמְצְאָה	מִצְּאָה	מֻצְּאָה	הִתְמַצְּאָה	הִמְצִיאָה	הֻמְצְאָה
2 ms	מָצָאתָ	נִמְצֵאתָ	מִצֵּאתָ	מֻצֵּאתָ	הִתְמַצֵּאתָ	הִמְצֵאתָ	הֻמְצֵאתָ
2 fs	מָצָאת	נִמְצֵאת	מִצֵּאת	מֻצֵּאת	הִתְמַצֵּאת	הִמְצֵאת	הֻמְצֵאת
1 cs	מָצָאתִי	נִמְצֵאתִי	מִצֵּאתִי	מֻצֵּאתִי	הִתְמַצֵּאתִי	הִמְצֵאתִי	הֻמְצֵאתִי
3 cp	מָצְאוּ	נִמְצְאוּ	מִצְּאוּ	מֻצְּאוּ	הִתְמַצְּאוּ	הִמְצִיאוּ	הֻמְצְאוּ
2 mp	מְצָאתֶם	נִמְצֵאתֶם	מִצֵּאתֶם	מֻצֵּאתֶם	הִתְמַצֵּאתֶם	הִמְצֵאתֶם	הֻמְצֵאתֶם
2 fp	מְצָאתֶן	נִמְצֵאתֶן	מִצֵּאתֶן	מֻצֵּאתֶן	הִתְמַצֵּאתֶן	הִמְצֵאתֶן	הֻמְצֵאתֶן
1 cp	מָצָאנוּ	נִמְצֵאנוּ	מִצֵּאנוּ	מֻצֵּאנוּ	הִתְמַצֵּאנוּ	הִמְצֵאנוּ	הֻמְצֵאנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִמְצָא	יִמָּצֵא	יְמַצֵּא	יְמֻצָּא	יִתְמַצֵּא	יַמְצִיא	יֻמְצָא
3 fs	תִּמְצָא	תִּמָּצֵא	תְּמַצֵּא	תְּמֻצָּא	תִּתְמַצֵּא	תַּמְצִיא	תֻּמְצָא
2 ms	תִּמְצָא	תִּמָּצֵא	תְּמַצֵּא	תְּמֻצָּא	תִּתְמַצֵּא	תַּמְצִיא	תֻּמְצָא
2 fs	תִּמְצְאִי	תִּמָּצְאִי	תְּמַצְּאִי	תְּמֻצְּאִי	תִּתְמַצְּאִי	תַּמְצִיאִי	תֻּמְצְאִי
1 cs	אֶמְצָא	אֶמָּצֵא	אֲמַצֵּא	אֲמֻצָּא	אֶתְמַצֵּא	אַמְצִיא	אֻמְצָא
3 mp	יִמְצְאוּ	יִמָּצְאוּ	יְמַצְּאוּ	יְמֻצְּאוּ	יִתְמַצְּאוּ	יַמְצִיאוּ	יֻמְצְאוּ
3 fp	תִּמְצֶאנָה	תִּמָּצֶאנָה	תְּמַצֶּאנָה	תְּמֻצֶּאנָה	תִּתְמַצֶּאנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה	תֻּמְצֶאנָה
2 mp	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּמָּצְאוּ	תְּמַצְּאוּ	תְּמֻצְּאוּ	תִּתְמַצְּאוּ	תַּמְצִיאוּ	תֻּמְצְאוּ
2 fp	תִּמְצֶאנָה	תִּמָּצֶאנָה	תְּמַצֶּאנָה	תְּמֻצֶּאנָה	תִּתָּמַצֶּאנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה	תֻּמְצֶאנָה
1 cp	נִמְצָא	נִמָּצֵא	נְמַצֵּא	נְמֻצָּא	נִתְמַצֵּא	נַמְצִיא	נֻמְצָא

	Qal	Niphʾal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hitphaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	מְצָא	הִמָּצֵא	מַצֵּא		הִתְמַצֵּא	הַמְצֵא	
2 fs	מִצְאִי	הִמָּצְאִי	מַצְּאִי		הִתְמַצְּאִי	הַמְצִיאִי	
2 mp	מִצְאוּ	הִמָּצְאוּ	מַצְּאוּ		הִתְמַצְּאוּ	הַמְצִיאוּ	
2 fp	מְצֶאנָה	הִמָּצֶאנָה	מַצֶּאנָה		הִתְמַצֶּאנָה	הַמְצֶאנָה	

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct							
	מְצֹא	הִמָּצֵא	מַצֵּא	מֻצָּא	הִתְמַצֵּא	הַמְצִיא	הֻמְצָא
Infinitive Absolute							
	מָצוֹא	נִמְצֹא	מַצֵּא	מֻצָּא	הִתְמַצֵּא	הַמְצֵא	הֻמְצֵא

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	מֹצֵא		מְמַצֵּא		מִתְמַצֵּא	מַמְצִיא	
mp	מֹצְאִים		מְמַצְּאִים		מִתְמַצְּאִים	מַמְצִיאִים	
fs	מֹצֵאת		מְמַצֵּאת		מִתְמַצֵּאת	מַמְצִיאָה	
			מְמַצְּאָה		מִתְמַצְּאָה		
fp	מֹצְאוֹת		מְמַצְּאוֹת		מִתְמַצְּאוֹת	מַמְצִיאוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	מָצוּא	נִמְצָא		מְמֻצָּא			מֻמְצָא
mp	מְצוּאִים	נִמְצָאִים		מְמֻצָּאִים			מֻמְצָאִים
fs	מְצוּאָה	נִמְצָאת		מְמֻצָּאָה			מֻמְצָאָה
		נִמְצָאָה					
fp	מְצוּאוֹת	נִמְצָאוֹת		מְמֻצָּאוֹת			מֻמְצָאוֹת

VERB CHART 7 – III-He [Lamed He]

	Qal	Niphʿal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hithpaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	גָּלָה	נִגְלָה	גִּלָּה	גֻּלָּה	הִתְגַּלָּה	הִגְלָה	הָגְלָה
3 fs	גָּלְתָה	נִגְלְתָה	גִּלְּתָה	גֻּלְּתָה	הִתְגַּלְּתָה	הִגְלְתָה	הָגְלְתָה
2 ms	גָּלִיתָ	נִגְלֵיתָ	גִּלִּיתָ	גֻּלֵּיתָ	הִתְגַּלִּיתָ	הִגְלֵיתָ	הָגְלֵיתָ
2 fs	גָּלִית	נִגְלֵית	גִּלִּית	גֻּלֵּית	הִתְגַּלִּית	הִגְלֵית	הָגְלֵית
1 cs	גָּלִיתִי	נִגְלֵיתִי	גִּלִּיתִי	גֻּלֵּיתִי	הִתְגַּלִּיתִי	הִגְלֵיתִי	הָגְלֵיתִי
3 cp	גָּלוּ	נִגְלוּ	גִּלּוּ	גֻּלּוּ	הִתְגַּלּוּ	הִגְלוּ	הָגְלוּ
2 mp	גְּלִיתֶם	נִגְלֵיתֶם	גִּלִּיתֶם	גֻּלֵּיתֶם	הִתְגַּלִּיתֶם	הִגְלֵיתֶם	הָגְלֵיתֶם
2 fp	גְּלִיתֶן	נִגְלֵיתֶן	גִּלִּיתֶן	גֻּלֵּיתֶן	הִתְגַּלִּיתֶן	הִגְלֵיתֶן	הָגְלֵיתֶן
1 cp	גָּלִינוּ	נִגְלֵינוּ	גִּלִּינוּ	גֻּלֵּינוּ	הִתְגַּלִּינוּ	הִגְלֵינוּ	הָגְלֵינוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִגְלֶה	יִגָּלֶה	יְגַלֶּה	יְגֻלֶּה	יִתְגַּלֶּה	יַגְלֶה	יָגְלֶה
3 fs	תִּגְלֶה	תִּגָּלֶה	תְּגַלֶּה	תְּגֻלֶּה	תִּתְגַּלֶּה	תַּגְלֶה	תָּגְלֶה
2 ms	תִּגְלֶה	תִּגָּלֶה	תְּגַלֶּה	תְּגֻלֶּה	תִּתְגַּלֶּה	תַּגְלֶה	תָּגְלֶה
2 fs	תִּגְלִי	תִּגָּלִי	תְּגַלִּי	תְּגֻלִּי	תִּתְגַּלִּי	תַּגְלִי	תָּגְלִי
1 cs	אֶגְלֶה	אֶגָּלֶה	אֲגַלֶּה	אֲגֻלֶּה	אֶתְגַּלֶּה	אַגְלֶה	אָגְלֶה
3 mp	יִגְלוּ	יִגָּלוּ	יְגַלּוּ	יְגֻלּוּ	יִתְגַּלּוּ	יַגְלוּ	יָגְלוּ
3 fp	תִּגְלֶינָה	תִּגָּלֶינָה	תְּגַלֶּינָה	תְּגֻלֶּינָה	תִּתְגַּלֶּינָה	תַּגְלֶינָה	תָּגְלֶינָה
2 mp	תִּגְלוּ	תִּגָּלוּ	תְּגַלּוּ	תְּגֻלּוּ	תִּתְגַּלּוּ	תַּגְלוּ	תָּגְלוּ
2 fp	תִּגְלֶינָה	תִּגָּלֶינָה	תְּגַלֶּינָה	תְּגֻלֶּינָה	תִּתְגַּלֶּינָה	תַּגְלֶינָה	תָּגְלֶינָה
1 cp	נִגְלֶה	נִגָּלֶה	נְגַלֶּה	נְגֻלֶּה	נִתְגַּלֶּה	נַגְלֶה	נָגְלֶה

	Qal	Niphʾal	Piʿel	Puʿal	Hitphaʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	גְּלֵה	הִגָּלֵה	גַּלֵּה		הִתְגַּלֵּה	הַגְלֵה	
2 fs	גְּלִי	הִגָּלִי	גַּלִּי		הִתְגַּלִּי	הַגְלִי	
2 mp	גְּלוּ	הִגָּלוּ	גַּלּוּ		הִתְגַּלּוּ	הַגְלוּ	
2 fp	גְּלֶינָה	הִגָּלֶינָה	גַּלֶּינָה		הִתְגַּלֶּינָה	הַגְלֶינָה	

Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct						
גְּלוֹת	הִגָּלוֹת	גַּלּוֹת	גֻּלּוֹת	הִתְגַּלּוֹת	הַגְלוֹת	הָגְלוֹת
Infinitive Absolute						
גָּלֹה	נִגְלֹה	גַּלֵּה	גֻּלֹּה	הִתְגַּלֵּה	הַגְלֵה	הָגְלֵה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi'el	Pu'al	Hitpha'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	גֹּלֶה		מְגַלֶּה		מִתְגַּלֶּה	מַגְלֶה	
mp	גֹּלִים		מְגַלִּים		מִתְגַּלִּים	מַגְלִים	
fs	גֹּלָה		מְגַלָּה		מִתְגַּלָּה	מַגְלָה	
fp	גֹּלוֹת		מְגַלּוֹת		מִתְגַּלּוֹת	מַגְלוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	גָּלוּי	נִגְלֶה		מְגֻלֶּה			מָגְלֶה
mp	גְּלוּיִים	נִגְלִים		מְגֻלִּים			מָגְלִים
fs	גְּלוּיָה	נִגְלָה		מְגֻלָּה			מָגְלָה
fp	גְּלוּיוֹת	נִגְלוֹת		מְגֻלּוֹת			מָגְלוֹת

VERB CHART 8 – I-Nun [Pe Nun]

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niphʿal	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	נָפַל	נָגַשׁ	לָקַח	לָקַח	נִגַּשׁ	הִגִּישׁ	הֻגַּשׁ
3 fs	נָפְלָה	נָגְשָׁה	לָקְחָה	לָקְחָה	נִגְּשָׁה	הִגִּישָׁה	הֻגְּשָׁה
2 ms	נָפַלְתָּ	נָגַשְׁתָּ	לָקַחְתָּ	לָקַחְתָּ	נִגַּשְׁתָּ	הִגַּשְׁתָּ	הֻגַּשְׁתָּ
2 fs	נָפַלְתְּ	נָגַשְׁתְּ	לָקַחְתְּ	לָקַחְתְּ	נִגַּשְׁתְּ	הִגַּשְׁתְּ	הֻגַּשְׁתְּ
1 cs	נָפַלְתִּי	נָגַשְׁתִּי	לָקַחְתִּי	לָקַחְתִּי	נִגַּשְׁתִּי	הִגַּשְׁתִּי	הֻגַּשְׁתִּי
3 cp	נָפְלוּ	נָגְשׁוּ	לָקְחוּ	לָקְחוּ	נִגְּשׁוּ	הִגִּישׁוּ	הֻגְּשׁוּ
2 mp	נְפַלְתֶּם	נְגַשְׁתֶּם	לְקַחְתֶּם	לְקַחְתֶּם	נִגַּשְׁתֶּם	הִגַּשְׁתֶּם	הֻגַּשְׁתֶּם
2 fp	נְפַלְתֶּן	נְגַשְׁתֶּן	לְקַחְתֶּן	לְקַחְתֶּן	נִגַּשְׁתֶּן	הִגַּשְׁתֶּן	הֻגַּשְׁתֶּן
1 cp	נָפַלְנוּ	נָגַשְׁנוּ	לָקַחְנוּ	לָקַחְנוּ	נִגַּשְׁנוּ	הִגַּשְׁנוּ	הֻגַּשְׁנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יִפֹּל	יִגַּשׁ	יִתֵּן	יִקַּח	יִנָּגֵשׁ	יַגִּישׁ	יֻגַּשׁ
3 fs	תִּפֹּל	תִּגַּשׁ	תִּתֵּן	תִּקַּח	תִּנָּגֵשׁ	תַּגִּישׁ	תֻּגַּשׁ
2 ms	תִּפֹּל	תִּגַּשׁ	תִּתֵּן	תִּקַּח	תִּנָּגֵשׁ	תַּגִּישׁ	תֻּגַּשׁ
2 fs	תִּפְּלִי	תִּגְּשִׁי	תִּתְּנִי	תִּקְּחִי	תִּנָּגְשִׁי	תַּגִּישִׁי	תֻּגְּשִׁי
1 cs	אֶפֹּל	אֶגַּשׁ	אֶתֵּן	אֶקַּח	אֶנָּגֵשׁ	אַגִּישׁ	אֻגַּשׁ
3 mp	יִפְּלוּ	יִגְּשׁוּ	יִתְּנוּ	יִקְּחוּ	יִנָּגְשׁוּ	יַגִּישׁוּ	יֻגְּשׁוּ
3 fp	תִּפֹּלְנָה	תִּגַּשְׁנָה	תִּתֵּנָּה	תִּקַּחְנָה	תִּנָּגַשְׁנָה	תַּגֵּשְׁנָה	תֻּגַּשְׁנָה
2 mp	תִּפְּלוּ	תִּגְּשׁוּ	תִּתְּנוּ	תִּקְּחוּ	תִּנָּגְשׁוּ	תַּגִּישׁוּ	תֻּגְּשׁוּ
2 fp	תִּפֹּלְנָה	תִּגַּשְׁנָה	תִּתֵּנָּה	תִּקַּחְנָה	תִּנָּגַשְׁנָה	תַּגֵּשְׁנָה	תֻּגַּשְׁנָה
1 cp	נִפֹּל	נִגַּשׁ	נִתֵּן	נִקַּח	נִנָּגֵשׁ	נַגִּישׁ	נֻגַּשׁ

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	נְפֹל	גַּשׁ	תֵּן	קַח	הִנָּגֵשׁ	הַגֵּשׁ	
2 fs	נִפְלִי	גְּשִׁי	תְּנִי	קְחִי	הִנָּגְשִׁי	הַגִּישִׁי	
2 mp	נִפְלוּ	גְּשׁוּ	תְּנוּ	קְחוּ	הִנָּגְשׁוּ	הַגִּישׁוּ	
2 fp	נְפֹלְנָה	גַּשְׁנָה	תֵּנָּה	קַחְנָה	הִנָּגַשְׁנָה	הַגֵּשְׁנָה	

Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al	Hifˈil	Hofˈal
Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct						
נְפֹל	גֶּשֶׁת	תֵּת	קַחַת	הִנָּגֵשׁ	הַגִּישׁ	הֻגַּשׁ
Infinitive Absolute						
נָפוֹל	נָגוֹשׁ	נָתוֹן	לָקוֹחַ	הִנָּגֵשׁ	הַגֵּשׁ	הֻגֵּשׁ

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al	Hifˈil	Hofˈal
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	נֹפֵל	נֹגֵשׁ	נֹתֵן	לֹקֵחַ		מַגִּישׁ	
mp	נֹפְלִים	נֹגְשִׁים	נֹתְנִים	לֹקְחִים		מַגִּישִׁים	
fs	נֹפְלָה	נֹגְשָׁה	נֹתְנָה	לֹקְחָה		מַגִּישָׁה	
fp	נֹפְלוֹת	נֹגְשׁוֹת	נֹתְנוֹת	לֹקְחוֹת		מַגִּישׁוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms	נָפוּל				נִגָּשׁ		מֻגָּשׁ
mp	נְפוּלִים				נִגָּשִׁים		מֻגָּשִׁים
fs	נְפוּלָה				נִגָּשָׁה		מֻגָּשָׁה
fp	נְפוּלוֹת				נִגָּשׁוֹת		מֻגָּשׁוֹת

VERB CHART 9 – II-Vav/ II-Yod ['Ayin Vav/ 'Ayin Yod]

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active
Perfect					
3 ms	קָם	שָׂם	בָּא	בּוֹשׁ	מֵת
3 fs	קָמָה	שָׂמָה	בָּאָה	בּוֹשָׁה	מֵתָה
2 ms	קַמְתָּ	שַׂמְתָּ	תָּאתָ	בֹּשְׁתָּ	מַתָּה
2 fs	קַמְתְּ	שַׂמְתְּ	בָּאת	בֹּשְׁתְּ	מַתְּ
1 cs	קַמְתִּי	שַׂמְתִּי	בָּאתִי	בֹּשְׁתִּי	מַתִּי
3 cp	קָמוּ	שָׂמוּ	בָּאוּ	בּוֹשׁוּ	מֵתוּ
2 mp	קַמְתֶּם	שַׂמְתֶּם	בָּאתֶם	בָּשְׁתֶּם	מַתֶּם
2 fp	קַמְתֶּן	שַׂמְתֶּן	בָּאתֶן	בָּשְׁתֶּן	מַתֶּן
1 cp	קַמְנוּ	שַׂמְנוּ	בָּאנוּ	בּוֹשְׁנוּ	מַתְנוּ
Imperfect					
3 ms	יָקוּם	יָשִׂים	יָבוֹא	יֵבוֹשׁ	יָמוּת
3 fs	תָּקוּם	תָּשִׂים	תָּבוֹא	תֵּבוֹשׁ	תָּמוּת
2 ms	תָּקוּם	תָּשִׂים	תָּבוֹא	תֵּבוֹשׁ	תָּמוּת
2 fs	תָּקוּמִי	תָּשִׂימִי	תָּבוֹאִי	תֵּבוֹשִׁי	תָּמוּתִי
1 cs	אָקוּם	אָשִׂים	אָבוֹא	אֵבוֹשׁ	אָמוּת
3 mp	יָקוּמוּ	יָשִׂימוּ	יָבוֹאוּ	יֵבוֹשׁוּ	יָמוּתוּ
3 fp	תְּקוּמֶינָה	תְּשִׂימֶינָה	תָּבוֹאנָה	תֵּבוֹשְׁנָה	תְּמוּתֶינָה
2 mp	תָּקוּמוּ	תָּשִׂימוּ	תָּבוֹאוּ	תֵּבוֹשׁוּ	תָּמוּתוּ
2 fp	תְּקוּמֶינָה	תְּשִׂימֶינָה	תָּבוֹאנָה	תֵּבוֹשְׁנָה	תְּמוּתֶינָה
1 cp	נָקוּם	נָשִׂים	נָבוֹא	נֵבוֹשׁ	נָמוּת

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive
Imperative					
2 ms	קוּם	שִׂים	בּוֹא	בּוֹשׁ	מוּת
2 fs	קוּמִי	שִׂמִי	בּוֹאִי	בּוֹשִׁי	מוּתִי
2 mp	קוּמוּ	שִׂימוּ	בּוֹאוּ	בּוֹשׁוּ	מוּתוּ
2 fp	קֹמְנָה	שְׂמְנָה	בּוֹאנָה	בֹּשְׁנָה	מֹתְנָה

Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al
Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive
Infinitive Construct				
קוּם		בּוֹא	בּוֹשׁ	מוּת
Infinitive Absolute				
קוֹם	שׂוֹם	בּוֹא	בּוֹשׁ	מוֹת

	Qal	Qal	Qal	Qal	Niph'al
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive
Active Participle					
ms	קָם	שָׂם	בָּא	בּוֹשׁ	מֵת
mp	קָמִים	שָׂמִים	בָּאִים	בּוֹשִׁים	מֵתִים
fs	קָמָה	שָׂמָה	בָּאָה	בּוֹשָׁה	מֵתָה
fp	קָמוֹת	שָׂמוֹת	בָּאוֹת	בּוֹשׁוֹת	מֵתוֹת

VERB CHART 9 – II-Vav/II-Yod ['Ayin Vav/'Ayin Yod] Continued

	Niph'al	Polʿel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect				
3 ms	נָכוֹן	כּוֹנֵן	הֵקִים	הוּמַת
3 fs	נָכוֹנָה	כּוֹנְנָה	הֵקִימָה	הוּמְתָה
2 ms	נְכוּנוֹתָ	כּוֹנַנְתָּ	הֲקִימוֹתָ	הוּמַתָּ
2 fs	נְכוּנוֹת	כּוֹנַנְתְּ	הֲקִימוֹת	הוּמַתְּ
1 cs	נְכוּנוֹתִי	כּוֹנַנְתִּ	הֲקִימוֹתִי	הוּמַתִּי
3 cp	נָכוֹנוּ	כּנְנוּ	הֵקִימוּ	הוּמְתוּ
2 mp	נְכוּנוֹתֶם	כּוֹנַנְתֶּם	הֲקִימוֹתֶם	הוּמַתֶּם
2 fp	נְכוּנוֹתֶן	כּוֹנַנְתֶּן	הֲקִימוֹתֶן	הוּמַתֶּן
1 cp	כּוּנוֹנוּ	כּוֹנַנּוּ	הֲקִימוֹנוּ	הוּמַתְנוּ
Imperfect				
3 ms	יִכּוֹן	יְכוֹנֵן	יָקִים	יוּמַת
3 fs	תִּכּוֹן	תְּכוֹנֵן	תָּקִים	תּוּמַת
2 ms	תִּכּוֹן	תְּכוֹנֵן	תָּקִים	תּוּמַת
2 fs	תִּכּנִי	תְּכוֹנְנִי	תָּקִימִי	תּוּמְתִי
1 cs	אֶכּוֹן	אֲכוֹנֵן	אָקִים	אוּמַת
3 mp	יִכּוֹנוּ	יְכוֹנְנוּ	יָקִימוּ	יוּמְתוּ
3 fp	תִּכּוֹנָה	תְּכוֹנֵנָה	תָּקֵמְנָה	תּוּמַתְנָה
2 mp	תִּכּוֹנוּ	תְּכוֹנְנוּ	תָּקִימוּ	תּוּמְתוּ
2 fp	תִּכּוֹנָה	תְּכוֹנֵנָה	תָּקֵמְנָה	תּוּמַתְנָה
1 cp	נִכּוֹן	נְכוֹנֵן	נָקִים	נוּמַת

	Niph'al	Pol'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative				
2 ms	הִכּוֹן	כּוֹנֵן	הָקֵם	
2 fs	הִכּוֹנִי	כּוֹנְנִי	הָקִימִי	
2 mp	הִכּוֹנוּ	כּוֹנְנוּ	הָקִימוּ	
2 fp	הִכּוֹנָה	כּוֹנֵנָּה	הָקֵמְנָה	

Niph'al	Pol'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct			
הִכּוֹן	כּוֹנֵן	הָקִים	הוּקַם
Infinitive Absolute			
הִכּוֹן	כּוֹנֵן	הָקֵם	הוּמֵת

	Niph'al	Pol'el	Hif'il	Hof'al
	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle				
ms		מְכוֹנֵן	מֵקִים	
mp		מְכוֹנְנִים	מְקִימִים	
fs		מְכוֹנֶנָה	מְקִימָה	
fp		מְכוֹנְנוֹת	מְקִימוֹת	
Passive Participle				
ms	נָכוֹן			מוּמָת
mp	נְכוֹנִים			מוּמָתִים
fs	נְכוֹנָה			מוּמָתָה
fp	נְכוֹנוֹת			מוּמָתוֹת

VERB CHART 10 – I-Vav/I-Yod [Pe Vav/Pe Yod]

	Qal	Qal	Niphʿal	Hifʿil	Hofʿal	Qal	Hifʿil
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
Perfect							
3 ms	יָשַׁב	יָרֵא	נוֹשַׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יָטַב	הֵיטִיב
3 fs	יָשְׁבָה	יָרְאָה	נוֹשְׁבָה	הוֹשִׁיבָה	הוּשְׁבָה	יָטְבָה	הֵיטִיבָה
2 ms	יָשַׁבְתָּ	יָרֵאתָ	נוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוּשַׁבְתָּ	יָטַבְתָּ	הֵיטַבְתָּ
2 fs	יָשַׁבְתְּ	יָרֵאת	נוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוּשַׁבְתְּ	יָטַבְתְּ	הֵיטַבְתְּ
1 cs	יָשַׁבְתִּי	יָרֵאתִי	נוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוּשַׁבְתִּי	יָטַבְתִּי	הֵיטַבְתִּי
3 cp	יָשְׁבוּ	יָרְאוּ	נוֹשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הוּשְׁבוּ	יָטְבוּ	הֵיטִיבוּ
2 mp	יְשַׁבְתֶּם	יְרֵאתֶם	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוּשַׁבְתֶּם	יְטַבְתֶּם	הֵיטַבְתֶּם
2 fp	יְשַׁבְתֶּן	יְרֵאתֶן	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוּשַׁבְתֶּן	יְטַבְתֶּן	הֵיטַבְתֶּן
1 cp	יָשַׁבְנוּ	יָרֵאנוּ	נוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוּשַׁבְנוּ	יָטַבְנוּ	הֵיטַבְנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יֵשֵׁב	יִירָא	יִוָּשֵׁב	יוֹשִׁיב	יוּשַׁב	יִיטַב	יֵיטִיב
3 fs	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּירָא	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
2 ms	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּירָא	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
2 fs	תֵּשְׁבִי	תִּירְאִי	תִּוָּשְׁבִי	תּוֹשִׁיבִי	תּוּשְׁבִי	תִּיטְבִי	תֵּיטִיבִי
1 cs	אֵשֵׁב	אִירָא	אִוָּשֵׁב	אוֹשִׁיב	אוּשַׁב	אִיטַב	אֵיטִיב
3 mp	יֵשְׁבוּ	יִירְאוּ	יִוָּשְׁבוּ	יוֹשִׁיבוּ	יוּשְׁבוּ	יִיטְבוּ	יֵיטִיבוּ
3 fp	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירֶאנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה
2 mp	תֵּשְׁבוּ	תִּירְאוּ	תִּוָּשְׁבוּ	תּוֹשִׁיבוּ	תּוּשְׁבוּ	תִּיטְבוּ	תֵּיטִיבוּ
2 fp	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירֶאנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה
1 cp	נֵשֵׁב	נִירָא	נִוָּשֵׁב	נוֹשִׁיב	נוּשַׁב	נִיטַב	נֵיטִיב

	Qal	Qal	Niphʿal	Hifʿil	Hofʿal	Qal	Hifʿil
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
Imperative							
2 ms	שֵׁב	יְרָא	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשֵׁב		יְטַב	הֵיטֵב
2 fs	שְׁבִי	יִרְאִי	הִוָּשְׁבִי	הוֹשִׁיבִי		יִטְבִי	הֵיטִיבִי
2 mp	שְׁבוּ	יִרְאוּ	הִוָּשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ		יִטְבוּ	הֵיטִיבוּ
2 fp	שֵׁבְנָה	יְרֶאנָה	הִוָּשַׁבְנָה	הוֹשֵׁבְנָה		יְטַבְנָה	הֵיטֵבְנָה

	Qal	Qal	Niph῾al	Hif῾il	Hof῾al	Qal	Hif῾il
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
Infinitive Construct							
	שֶׁבֶת	יְרֹאָה	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יְטֹב	הֵיטִיב
Infinitive Absolute							
	יָשׁוֹב		הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשֵׁב	הוּשֵׁב	יָטוֹב	הֵיטֵב

	Qal	Qal	Niph῾al	Hif῾il	Hof῾al	Qal	Hif῾il
	Simple active	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive	Simple active	Causative active
Active Participle							
ms	יֹשֵׁב	יָרֵא		מוֹשִׁיב		יֹטֵב	מֵיטִיב
mp	יֹשְׁבִים			מוֹשִׁיבִים		יֹטְבִים	מֵיטִיבִים
fs	יֹשְׁבָה			מוֹשִׁיבָה		יֹטְבָה	מֵיטִיבָה
fp	יֹשְׁבוֹת			מוֹשִׁיבוֹת		יֹטְבוֹת	מֵיטִיבוֹת
Passive Participle							
ms			נוֹשָׁב		מוּשָׁב		
mp			נוֹשָׁבִים		מוּשָׁבִים		
fs			נוֹשָׁבָה		מוּשָׁבָה		
fp			נוֹשָׁבוֹת		מוּשָׁבוֹת		

VERB CHART 11 – Geminate [Double ʿAyin]

	Qal	Niphʿal	Polel	Polal	Hitpolel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive Passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Perfect							
3 ms	סַב	נָסַב	סוֹבֵב	סוֹבַב	הִסְתּוֹבֵב	הֵסַב	הוּסַב
3 fs	סַבָּה	נָסַבָּה	סוֹבְבָה	סוֹבְבָה	הִסְתּוֹבְבָה	הֵסַבָּה	הוּסַבָּה
2 ms	סַבּוֹתָ	נְסַבּוֹתָ	סוֹבַבְתָּ	סוֹבַבְתָּ	הִסְתּוֹבַבְתָּ	הֲסִבּוֹתָ	הוּסַבּוֹתָ
2 fs	סַבּוֹת	נְסַבּוֹת	סוֹבַבְתְּ	סוֹבַבְתְּ	הִסְתּוֹבַבְתְּ	הֲסִבּוֹת	הוּסַבּוֹת
1 cs	סַבּוֹתִי	נְסַבּוֹתִי	סוֹבַבְתִּי	סוֹבַבְתִּי	הִסְתּוֹבַבְתִּי	הֲסִבּוֹתִי	הוּסַבּוֹתִי
3 cp	סַבּוּ	נָסַבּוּ	סוֹבְבוּ	סוֹבְבוּ	הִסְתּוֹבְבוּ	הֵסַבּוּ	הוּסַבּוּ
2 mp	סַבּוֹתֶם	נְסַבּוֹתֶם	סוֹבַבְתֶּם	סוֹבַבְתֶּם	הִסְתּוֹבַבְתֶּם	הֲסִבּוֹתֶם	הוּסַבּוֹתֶם
2 fp	סַבּוֹתֶן	נְסַבּוֹתֶן	סוֹבַבְתֶּן	סוֹבַבְתֶּן	הִסְתּוֹבַבְתֶּן	הֲסִבּוֹתֶן	הוּסַבּוֹתֶן
1 cp	סַבּוֹנוּ	נְסַבּוֹנוּ	סוֹבַבְנוּ	סוֹבַבְנוּ	הִסְתּוֹבַבְנוּ	הֲסִבּוֹנוּ	הוּסַבּוֹנוּ
Imperfect							
3 ms	יָסֹב	יִסַּב	יְסוֹבֵב	יְסוֹבַב	יִסְתּוֹבֵב	יָסֵב	יוּסַב
3 fs	תָּסֹב	תִּסַּב	תְּסוֹבֵב	תְּסוֹבַב	תִּסְתּוֹבֵב	תָּסֵב	תּוּסַב
2 ms	תָּסֹב	תִּסַּב	תְּסוֹבֵב	תְּסוֹבַב	תִּסְתּוֹבֵב	תָּסֵב	תּוּסַב
2 fs	תָּסֹבִּי	תִּסַּבִּי	תְּסוֹבְבִי	תְּסוֹבְבִי	תִּסְתּוֹבְבִי	תָּסֵבִּי	תּוּסַבִּי
1 cs	אָסֹב	אֶסַּב	אֲסוֹבֵב	אֲסוֹבַב	אֶסְתּוֹבֵב	אָסֵב	אוּסַב
3 mp	יָסֹבּוּ	יִסַּבּוּ	יְסוֹבְבוּ	יְסוֹבְבוּ	יִסְתּוֹבְבוּ	יָסֵבּוּ	יוּסַבּוּ
3 fp	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תִּסַּבֶּינָה	תְּסוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסוֹבַבְנָה	תִּסְתּוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תּוּסַבֶּינָה
2 mp	תָּסֹבּוּ	תִּסַּבּוּ	תְּסוֹבְבוּ	תְּסוֹבְבוּ	תִּסְתּוֹבְבוּ	תָּסֵבּוּ	תּוּסַבּוּ
2 fp	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תִּסַּבֶּינָה	תְּסוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסוֹבַבְנָה	תִּסְתּוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תּוּסַבֶּינָה
1 cp	נָסֹב	נִסַּב	נְסוֹבֵב	נְסוֹבַב	נִסְתּוֹבֵב	נָסֵב	נוּסַב

	Qal	Niphʿal	Polel	Polal	Hitpolel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive Passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Imperative							
2 ms	סֹב	הִסַּב	סוֹבֵב		הִסְתּוֹבֵב	הָסֵב	
2 fs	סֹבִּי	הִסַּבִּי	סוֹבְבִי		הִסְתּוֹבְבִי	הָסֵבִּי	
2 mp	סֹבּוּ	הִסַּבּוּ	סוֹבְבוּ		הִסְתּוֹבְבוּ	הָסֵבּוּ	
2 fp	סֻבֶּינָה	הִסַּבֶּינָה	סוֹבֵבְנָה		הִסְתּוֹבֵבְנָה	הֲסִבֶּינָה	

Qal	Niphʿal	Polel	Polal	Hitpolel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive Passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Infinitive Construct						
סֹב	הִסַּב	סוֹבֵב	סוֹבַב	הִסְתּוֹבֵב	הָסֵב	הוּסַב
Infinitive Absolute						
סָבוֹב	הִסֹּב	סוֹבֵב	סוֹבַב	הִסְתּוֹבֵב	הָסֵב	הוּסֵב

	Qal	Niphʿal	Polel	Polal	Hitpolel	Hifʿil	Hofʿal
	Simple active	Simple passive/ reflexive	Intensive active	Intensive Passive	Intensive reflexive	Causative active	Causative passive
Active Participle							
ms	סֹבֵב		מְסוֹבֵב		מִסְתּוֹבֵב	מֵסֵב	
mp	סֹבְבִים		מְסוֹבְבִים		מִסְתּוֹבְבִים	מְסַבִּים	
fs	סֹבְבָה		מְסוֹבְבָה		מִסְתּוֹבְבָה	מְסַבָּה	
fp	סֹבְבוֹת		מְסוֹבְבוֹת		מִסְתּוֹבְבוֹת	מְסַבּוֹת	
Passive Participle							
ms		נָסָב		מְסוֹבָב			מוּסָב
mp		נְסַבִּים		מְסוֹבָבִים			מוּסָבִים
fs		נְסַבָּה		מְסוֹבָבָה			מוּסָבָה
fp		נְסַבּוֹת		מְסוֹבָבוֹת			מוּסָבוֹת

Dictionary of Grammar Terms

Afformative. The suffix (pronominal) ending of a verbs, nouns and prepositions describing person, gender, and number.

Assimilation. Assimilation is the process where a letter is absorbed or assimilated into the consonant following it by use of the Daghesh Forte (e.g. יִפֹּל ← יִנְפֹּל).

Biconsonantal. A word that has a two consonant root (e.g. אָב).

Cohortative. A first person singular or plural imperfect verb used to express the speaker's desire to perform the action.

Construct Relationship. A construct relationship is when two or more nouns are joined together in a sentence by simple juxtaposition or by the Maqqef (-). The final noun remains in the absolute state and the noun preceding is in the construct state. The result is the close relationship of the two nouns is emphasized as they express a genitival relationship.

Daghesh Forte. A dot in the letter which indicates one is to double the consonant in which it occurs. For example in, הַבֵּן (habben), the bet is doubled

Daghesh Lene. The dot placed in the letter that indicates a hard pronunciation. These letters are called begadkephat (a composite built on the names of the six letters בגדכפת) as a way to remember the six letters. These letters are ב, ג, ד, כ, פ, ת .

Geminate. A word that has the second and third consonants identical.

Gutturals. The gutturals are: א, ע, ה, ח, and sometimes ר

Jussive. A jussive is a second or third person imperfect verb used to express a wish, desire, or command.

Metathesis. Metathesis is the transposition of two contiguous (side-by-side) consonants in order to smooth out pronunciation of the word.

Modal Auxiliary. A modal auxiliary is a helping word for verbs to express the various distinctions of mode. These include words like, "could, should, may, must, shall, will."

Mode (Mood). Mood is a characteristic of the verb describing the speaker's attitude toward the action. These moods include: Indicative, expressing the certainty of action; Subjunctive, expressing uncertainty of action; Imperative, expressing a command; and Jussive, expressing a wish or desire for action.

Prefix. Something added to the beginning of a verb root to help to determine the remaining inflected verb forms.

Performative. A performative is the same as a prefix.

Sibilants. A sibilant is a term used to describe letters of the Hebrew alphabet that have an "s" sound (e.g. ז , ס , צ , שׂ and שׁ).

Sign of the Direct Object. The Sign of the Direct Object (SDO) is the particle אֶת placed before the definite noun used to indicate the noun that receives the action of the verb.

Sof Passuq. A Sof Passuq, like a English period, is the mark (׃) that indicates the end of a sentence or verse.

Sufformative. A sufformative is the same as a suffix.

Substantive. A substantive is any grammatical element functioning as a noun. Substantives may be nouns, participles, or adjectives.

Vocalic Suffix. A vocalic suffix is a verb suffix that begins with a vowel.

Answers to Questions

Chapter 2 The alphabet

Transliterate the following proper names:

1. בית לחם (Mic. 5:1)   Ans.: Bethlehem
2. בנימיו (Gen. 42:4)   Ans.: Benjamin
3. דוד (1 Sam. 16:23)   Ans.: David

Write the following in Hebrew:

4. ysr'l   Ans.: יִשְׂרָאֵל
5. hlk   Ans.: הָלַךְ
6. ywntn   Ans.: יונתו

Chapter 3 Nouns

Identify the gender and number following nouns (e.g., סוּסִים : Mas. Pl., from סוּס horse)

1	אֲדָמָה	Ans.: fem. sg.
2	דְּבָרִים	Ans.: mas. pl.
3	דְּרָכִים	Ans.: mas. pl.
4	נְבִיאִים	Ans.: mas. pl.
5	עֵינַיִם	Ans.: fem. du.
6	סְפָרִים	Ans.: mas. pl.

Make the following words plural:

1	אֲדָמָה (f)	Ans.: אֲדָמוֹת
2	אָב (m)	Ans.: אָבוֹת
3	כֹּהֵן (m)	Ans.: כֹּהֲנִים
4	קוֹל (f)	Ans.: קוֹלוֹת
5	אִשָּׁה (f)	Ans.: אִשֹׁת or נָשִׁים

Chapter 4   Noun Prefixes

A. Identify the gender and number of the nouns and translate (e.g., סוּסִים : Mas. Pl., from סוּס horse).

1. יוֹסֵף וּבְנְיָמִין וּרְאוּבֵן אַחִים Ans.: "Joseph and Benjamin and Ruben [are] brothers"
2. לָאֲנָשִׁים יָדַיִם   Ans.: "men have a pair of hands"

B. Make the following nouns definite.

1. הָרוֹעֶה   Ans.: "the shepherd" (there is no doubling resh)
2. הַשָּׂדֶה   Ans.: "the field"

C. Add the vav conjunction to the following nouns.

1. וּמֹשֶׁה   Ans.: "and Moses"
2. וְיוֹם   Ans.: "and day"

D. Translate the following:
  1. וּבָאָרֶץ   Ans.: "and in earth"
  2. וּבִיוֹם   Ans.: "and in the day"
  3. בַדָּבָר   Ans.: "to the word"

Chapter 5 Adjectives

I. Identify the following and translate (identify as adj.m.sg, and n.m.sg. for nouns)
    1. אִשָּׁה   יָפָה
      adj.f.sg n.f.sg   Ans.: "a beautiful woman"
    2. הָעִיר   הַגְּדוֹלָה
      adj.f.sg. n.f.sg.   Ans.: "the great city"
    3. בְּרִית   חֲדָשָׁה
      adj.f.sg. n.f.sg.   Ans. "a new covenant" (Jer. 31:31)

II. Identify and translate the following predicate adjectives.
    1. טוֹב   הַדָּבָר   Ans.: "The word [is] good" (1 Kings 2:38)
      n.m.sg. adj.m.sg.
    2. מְאֹד   זָקֵן   וְהַמֶּלֶךְ   Ans.: "And the king [is] very old" (1 Kgs 1:15)
      adj.m.sg. adj.m.sg. n.m.sg.
    3. יְהוָה   וְיָשָׁר - טוֹב   Ans.: "good and upright [is] the LORD" (Ps 25:8)
      n.m.sg adj.m.sg. adj.m.sg.
    4. הַיּוֹם   קָרוֹב   Ans.: "the day [is] near" (Ezek. 7:7)
      n.m.sg. adj.m.sg.
    5. הַיּוֹם   קָדוֹשׁ   Ans.: "the day [is] holy"
      n.m.sg. adj. m.sg.
    6. יְהוָה   גָּדוֹל   אֵל   Ans.: "[the] LORD is a great God" (Ps 95:3)
      n.m.sg., adj.m.sg., n.m.sg.

Chapter 6 Prepositions

I. Memorize all the prepositions
II. Translate the following:
    1. אַחַר הַדְּבָרִים   Ans.: "after the words"
    2. וּבֵין עֲשֶׂרֶת יָמִים   Ans.: "and between ten days"
    3. כָּל־הֶהָרִים הַגְּבֹהִים אֲשֶׁר־תַּחַת כָּל־הַשָּׁמָיִם   Ans."all the high mountains under the entire heavens [are] covered."

Chapter 7 Pronouns

Chapter 8 Pronominal Suffixes

    I.   Memorize pronominal suffixes for singular nouns (Masc. or Fem.).

    II. Identify the following (e.g. יָדִי "my hand" 1cs)

      1   יֶדְכֶם   Ans.: "your hand" 2mp

      2   יְדֵיכֶם   Ans.: "your hands" 2mp

      3   דְּבָרֵךְ   Ans.: "your word" 2fs

      4   דִּבְרֵיהֶם   Ans.: "their words" 3mp

      5   אֲבוֹתֵינוּ   Ans.: "our fathers" 1cp

    III. Translate the following:

      1   יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת עִמָּנוּ   Ans.: "The LORD of hosts is with us" (Ps 46:12)

      2   וַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת עִמּוֹ Ans.: "The LORD, the God of hosts, was with him" (2 Sam 5:10)

Chapter 9 Construct Nouns

    I.   Translate the following:

    1.   תּוֹרוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ הַטּוֹבוֹת   Ans.: "the good laws of the king"

    2.   הֵיכְלֵי הַמַּלְכָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה   Ans.: "temples of the great queen"

    3.   שְׁמוֹת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל   Ans.: "names of sons [the] of Israel"

    4.   אֵשֶׁת הָאִישׁ הָרַע   Ans.: "women of the evil men"

    5.   כּוֹכְבֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם   Ans.: "stars of the heavens"

Chapter 10 Introduction to Verbs

    I.   Memorize the vocabulary.

II. Classify the following as strong or weak:
1. הָלַךְ   Ans.: weak
2. גָּנַב   Ans.: strong
3. אָהַב   Ans.: weak
4. יָדַע   Ans.: weak

Chapter 11 Qal Perfect Verbs

I. Memorize the vocabulary.
II. Parse the following perfect verbs (e.g. Qal Perf. 1cs)
1. הָיְתָה   Ans.: Qal Perf. 3f.sg.   "she/it built"
2. יָדַעְתִּי   Ans.: Qal Perf. 1c.sg.   "I know"
3. זָכַרְתִּי   Ans.: Qal Perf. 1c.sg.   "I remember"
4. מָלְאָה   Ans.: Qal Perf. 3f.sg.   "she/it filled"
5. יָדַעְנוּ   Ans.: Qal Perf. 1c.pl.   "we know"
6. זָכַרְתִּי   Ans.: Qal Perf. 1c.sg.   "I remembered"
7. כְתַבְתָּם   Ans.: Qal Perf. 2m.sg   "you write"
8. עָמַדְתִּי   Ans.: Qal Perf. 1c.sg.   "I stand"
9. שָׁבְתוּ   Ans.: Qal Perf. 3c.sg.   "they ceased"

III. Translate the following:
1. (Deut. 8:6) וְשָׁמַרְתָּ אֶת־מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לָלֶכֶת (go) בִּדְרָכָיו וּלְיִרְאָה (fear) אֹתוֹ

sdo+		prep +	qal.	n.m.pl.+	pr.n.	sdo +	vav+
p.s. 3ms.		n.c.pl.+ p.s. 3ms.	inf.	p.s.2ms		n.f.pl.	qal.perf.2ms.
him	and to fear	in the way	going	your God	Yahweh	commandment	keep

"you keep the commandments of the LORD your God, to walk in His ways and to fear Him."

2. (Gen. 34:28) וְאֶת־אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׂדֶה לָקָחוּ

qal.perf.	prep + art.	vav + sdo
3cpl	n.m.s.	r.pron.
they took	field	what

"they took what [was] in the field."

3. (Zech. 8:23) כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת בַּיָּמִים הָהֵמָּה אֲשֶׁר יַחֲזִיקוּ(be strong)

r.pron.	d.a. +	prep+d.a	n.c.pl.	pr.n.	qal.perf.	adv
	p.pron.	n.m.pl			3m.s.	
	3m.pl.					
they were strong	that	the them	in the days	army	Yahweh	he said thus

"Thus says the Lord of hosts:"in those days that they shall be strong"

4. (Ps. 78:10) לֹא שָׁמְרוּ בְּרִית אֱלֹהִים וּבְתוֹרָתוֹ מֵאֲנוּ(they refused) לָלֶכֶת (to go)

           vav+prep n.m.pl. n.f.s. qal.perf.

           n.f.s+   3c.pl.

           p.s.3m.s

      and in his law God covenant they keep not

"They did not keep [the] covenant of God; they refused to walk in His law."

5. (Gen. 4:1) וְהָאָדָם יָדַע אֶת־חַוָּה אִשְׁתּוֹ וַתַּהַר(she conceived) וַתֵּלֶד (I bear)

                  n.f.s.+ sdo+ qal.per. vav+d.a.

                  p.s.3m.s. pr.n.   3m.s.   n.m.s.

    and bore   and she conceived his woman Eve he knew   Adam

אֶת־קַיִן וַתֹּאמֶר קָנִיתִי (I buy) אִישׁ אֶת־יְהוָה

               sdo+   n.m.s. qal.perf. vav+qal.per. sdo+

               pr.n.   1c.s.   3f.s.   pr.n.

               Yahweh man I buy   and she said   Cain

"And Adam knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Cain, and said, "I acquired a man [from] the LORD."

Chapter 12 Qal Imperfect Verbs

Practice

   I. Memorize the vocabulary.

   II. Complete the Qal imperfect for the following and translate:

1.	3 ms	יִכְתֹּב	"he cut"	3 mp	יִכְתְּבוּ	"the cut"	
2.	3 fs	תִּכְתֹּב	"she cut"	3 fpl	תִּכְתֹּבְנָה	"they cut"	
3.	2 ms	תִּכְתֹּב	"you cut"	2 mp	תִּכְתְּבוּ	"you cut"	
4.	2 fs	תִּכְתְּבִי	"you cut"	2 fp	תִּכְתֹּבְנָה	"you cut"	
5.	1 cs	אֶכְתֹּב	"I cut"	1 cp	נִכְתֹּב	"we cut"	

   III. Translate the following:

1. (Isa. 43:25) וְחַטֹּאתֶיךָ לֹא אֶזְכֹּר

      Qal Impf. part. n.f.p. + ps 2ms + vav pre

      1c.s.

         I will remember not   your sins

   "and I will not remember your sins."

2. (Ps. 9:9) וְהוּא יִשְׁפֹּט־תֵּבֵל בְּצֶדֶק

      n.m.s + bet n.f.s Qal Impf p.pron.

                       3ms   3ms

      in righteousness he will judge the world

"He will judge the world in righteousness"

3. (Jer. 31:33) כִּי זֹאת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אֶכְרֹת אֶת־בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל

conj. adj.f.s. d.a. n.f.s. r.pron. Qal Impf. part. n.m.s. pr.n
                                   1cs

for this the covenant that I will make with the house Israel

"for this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel".

4. (Ezek. 43:7) אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁכָּן־שָׁם בְּתוֹךְ בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל לְעוֹלָם

r.pron. Qal. Impf. part. n.m.s. n.m.p. pr.n. n.m.s.
          1c.s.   bet prefix   + lamed prefix

where there I will dwell in the midst house of Israel forever

"where I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel forever."

Chapter 13 Qal Imperative & Pronominal Suffixes of Strong Verbs

    I. Memorize the vocabulary.
    II. Memorize the Qal Imperative Form
    III. Translate the following:

1. שְׁמַע יִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ יְהוָה אֶחָד

Qal Impv. pr.n. pr.n. n.m.pl. pr.n. num.
m.sg.   suf.1c.pl.

hear! Israel LORD our God LORD one

"Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD [is] one!" (Deut. 6:4)

2. לֵב טָהוֹר בְּרָא־לִי אֱלֹהִים

n.m.s. adj.m.sg. prep.+Qal Impv. n.m.pl.
   m.sg.   suf.1c.sg.

heart clean create in me God

"Create in me a clean heart, O God!" (Ps. 51:12a)

3. שָׁפְטֵנִי יְהוָה

Qal. Impv.m.sg p.n.
suf.1c.sg.

"Judge me, O LORD!" (Ps. 7:9)

4. יְהוָה   זָכְרֵנִי   וּפָקְדֵנִי

         p.n.   Qal Impv.msg.   Qal Impv m.sg.
                     suf.1c.sg.   +vav
                                      +suf.1c.sg.
     LORD   remember me   visit me

"O LORD, remember me and visit me!" (Jer. 15:15)

Chapter 14 Qal Infinitive - Strong Verbs

     I.   Memorize the vocabulary.
     II. Translate the following:

1. אִם־מָשׁוֹל   תִּמְשֹׁל   בָּנוּ

     Qal. Inf. part   Qal Impf.   bet prefix +
     abs.   2msg.   p.pron. 1cpl.
     if   to rule   you will rule   in us

Lit: "If ruling, you will rule in us." trans: "Will you indeed rule over us?" (Gen. 37:8)

2. וְלֹא־נָתַן   יְהוָה   לָכֶם   לֵב   לָדַעַת   וְעֵינַיִם   לִרְאוֹת

     Qal. Perf. part+   p.n.   prep.   n.m.s.   Qal. Inf.   n.c.du.   Qal. Inf.
     3m.s. vav   p.pron.   const.   vav   const.
                        2mpl.
   and he will not give   LORD   to you   heart   to observe   and eyes   to see

     וְאָזְנַיִם   לִשְׁמֹעַ   עַד   הַיּוֹם   הַזֶּה

     n.f.du.   Qal. Inf.   part.   n.m.s.+d.a.   d.pron. +d.a.
     vav   const.   m.sg.
     ears   to listen   until   the day   the this

"The Lord has not given to you a heart to know or eyes to see or ears to hear until this day." (Deut. 29:3 [29:4])

3. רְאוֹת   רַבּוֹת   וְלֹא   תִשְׁמֹר   פָּקוֹחַ   אָזְנַיִם   וְלֹא   יִשְׁמָע

     Qal Inf.   adj.f.pl.   part.   Qal Impf.   Qal Inf   n.f.du.   part.   Qal Impf
     abs.   +vav   2msg.   abs.   +vav   3msg.
   to see   many   but not   you watch   to open   ears   but not   he hears

"Seeing many things, but you [do] not observe; opening the ears, but he [does] not hear." (Isa. 42:20)

4. כִּי   בְּיוֹם   אֲכָלְךָ   מִמֶּנּוּ   מוֹת   תָּמוּת

     conj.   prep.   Qal Inf.   prep.   Qal Inf.   Qal. Impf.

2msg.	abs.	+pron.	const.	+n.m.sg.
		3msg.	suf.2msg.	
you will die	to die	from him	you eat	in the day for

"for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die." (Gen. 2:17b)

Chapter 15 Qal Participle - Strong Verbs

I. Memorize the vocabulary.
II. Translate the following:

דָוִד   בְּנִי   אַתָּה   בָּרוּךְ .1
pr.n.   n.m.s.   p.pron   Qal Pas. Part
        ps. 1c.s.   2m.s.   m.s.abs.
David   my son   you   be blessed

"Blessed be you, my son David!" (1 Sam. 26:25)

יְהוָה   גְּאוּלֵי   עַם־הַקֹּדֶשׁ   לָהֶם   וְקָרְאוּ .2
pr.n.   Qal Pas. Part.   n.m.s. n.m.s.   prep. prefix   Qal Perf.
        m.p.const.   def.art.   suf. 3m.p.   3c.p.
                                               vav prefix
LORD   redeemed of   the holy people   to them   they call and

"And they shall call them the holy people, the redeemed of the LORD" (Isa. 62:12)

מִשְׁפָּט   אֹהֵב   יְהוָה   אֲנִי   כִּי .3
n.m.s.   Qal Act. Part.   pr.n.   p.pron.   conj.
         m.s.   1c.s.
justice   love   LORD   I   for

"For I the LORD love justice" (Isa. 61:8)

בָּאֵשׁ   בֹּעֵר   וְהָהָר .4
n.c.s.   Qal Act. Part.   n.m.s.
prep. pref.   m.s.   vav prefix
in fire   burning   the mountain

"And the mountain was burning with fire" (Deu. 4:11)

Chapter 16 Niph'al Strong Verbs

I. Memorize the vocabulary.
II. Memorize the Niph'al perfect form.
III. Translate the following:

1. (you stretch out) תִּשַׁלַּח רוּחֲךָ יִבָּרֵאוּן (and you will renew) וּתְחַדֵּשׁ פְּנֵי אֲדָמָה
                  n.f.s n.c.pl. Piel Impf.   Nif. Impf. n.f.s. Piel Impf
                         2m.pl.   3m.pl. p.s. 2ms 2ms.
                       vav pref.
      ground face (and you will renew) **they will be created** your spirit you stretch out

    "You send forth your spirit, they are created and you renew the face of the
    earth." (Ps. 104:30)

2. (And I will bless) וַאֲבָרֲכָה (that bless you) מְבָרְכֶיךָ וּמְקַלֶּלְךָ אָאֹר וְנִבְרְכוּ בְךָ כֹּל מִשְׁפְּחֹת הָאֲדָמָה
  n.f.s. n.f.pl. n.m.s. bet prefix Nif. Perf. Qal Impf. Piel Part.   Piel Impf
  he pref.   p.pref.2ms 3c.p.   1c.s.   m.p.   1c.s.
                                   vav pref. suff. 2ms. vav pref.
  ground races all in you they were blessed I will curse be small that bless you bless I will bless

"And I will bless them that bless you, and curse him that curse you: and in these shall all
familes the earth be blessed. (Gen. 12:3)

3. כִּי ‑ בָנָה יְהוָה צִיּוֹן נִרְאָה בִּכְבוֹדוּ
                  n.m.s. Nif. Perf. pr.n.   pr.n. Qal Perf. conj.
                  p. suff. 3ms 3ms   3ms
                  bet pref.
           glory   he saw Zion LORD indeed he built (prophetic perfect)

"When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall appear in His glory." (Ps. 102:16; Heb.Ps. 102:17)

4. כִּי ‑ כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה חִנָּם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וְלֹא בְכֶסֶף תִּגָּאֵלוּ

  Nif. Impf.   n.m.s.   part. Nif. Perf. adv. pr.n. Qal Perf. adv.conj.
  2mpl.   bet prefix. vav pref. 2mpl.   3ms.
  you will be redeemed   and not you will be sold for nothing LORD said thus for

    "For thus says the LORD, you have sold yourselves for nought and you shall
    be redeemed without money." (Isa. 52:3)

Chapter 17 Pi'el Strong Verbs

I.   Memorize the vocabulary
II. Memorize the Pi'el Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative, and Participle forms.
III. Translate the following:

1. אֱלֹהַי   פַּלְּטֵנִי   מִיַּד   רָשָׁע

    adj.m.sg.   n.f.sg.   Piel Impv.   n.m.sg.
            w/mem pref. 2ms.ps. 1csg. ps. 1csg
    wicked from [the] hand rescue me my God

"Rescue me, O my God, from the hand of the wicked!" (Ps. 71:4a)

2. וַיְבָרֶךְ   אֹתָם   אֱלֹהִים   לֵאמֹר   פְּרוּ   וּרְבוּ

    vav pref. Qal Impv. Qal Inf. n.m.pl. SDO vav pref.
    Qal Impf. m.pl.   const.   ps. 3mpl Piel Impf.
     m.pl.   3msg.
        be fruitful to say God them blessed

בָּאָרֶץ   יִרֶב   וְהָעוֹף   בַּיַּמִּים   אֶת־הַמַּיִם   וּמִלְאוּ

    bet pref. Qal Impf. vav pref. bet pref.   SDO vav pref.
    n.f.sg.   3m.sg.   def. pref.   def. pref. Qal Impv.
                  n.m.sg. n.m.pl.   n.m.pl. 2m.pl.
    land to increase birds in the seas   the waters fill

"And God blessed them, saying, be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth." (Gen. 1:22)

3. בְּכָל ־ דְּרָכֶיךָ   דָעֵהוּ   וְהוּא   יְיַשֵּׁר   אֹרְחֹתֶיךָ

    n.c.pl. Piel Impf. vav pref. Qal Impv. n.pl. bet pref.
    p.s.2ms. 3ms.   pron.3ms. ms.   p.s.2ms. n.m.sg
                                  p.s.3ms.
    your ground he will straight and he know him your ways all

"In all your ways acknowledge him, and he will direct your paths." (Prov. 3:6)

4. הַדְרִיכֵנִי (lead me)   בַּאֲמִתֶּךָ   וְלַמְּדֵנִי   כִּי ־ אַתָּה   אֱלֹהֵי

    n.m.pl. pron. conj. vav pref. bet. pref. Hif. Impv.
    constr. 2msg.   Piel Impv. n.f.s.   ms.
                   p.s.1cs. p.s. 2ms. p.s.1cs.
    God you for and teach me in your truth lead me

יִשְׁעִי   אוֹתְךָ   קִוִּיתִי   כָּל - הַיּוֹם
def. pref. conj.   Piel Perf.   SDO   n.m.s.
n.m.s.   1cs.   p.s.2ms.   constr.
                                          p.s.1cs.
the day   for   I intensely wait   you   help me

"Lead me in your truth, and teach me: for you are the God of my salvation,
on you do I wait all the day." (Ps. 25:5)

דִּבֵּר   יְהוָה   פִּי   כִּי   יַחְדָּו   בָּשָׂר - כָּל   וְרָאוּ   יְהוָה   כְּבוֹד   (uncover) וְנִגְלָה   .5
Piel Perf.   pr.n.   n.m.s.   conj.   adv.   n.m.s.   conj.   vav pref.   pr.n.   n.m.s.   vav pref.
3ms.   constr.   Qal Perf.   Nif. Perf.
                                                                3cpl.   3ms.
he spoke   LORD   mouth   for   together   flesh   all   and they see   LORD   glory   be uncovered

"And the glory of the LORD will be revealed and all flesh will see it together, for the
mouth of the LORD has spoken it." (Isa. 40:5)

Chapter 18   Pu'al Strong Verbs

I.   Memorize the vocabulary
II. Memorize the Puʿal Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.
III. Translate the following:

מִבְּשָׂרִי   וּבָשָׂר   מֵעֲצָמַי   עֶצֶם   הַפַּעַם   זֹאת   הָאָדָם   וַיֹּאמֶר   .1
n.m.sg.   n.m.sg.   n.f.pl.   n.f.sg.   n.f.sg.   dem. pr.   n.m.sg.   Qal. Impf.
p.s. 1c.sg.   vav pref.   p.s. 1c.sg.   he pref.   f.sg.   he pref.   3m.sg.
                          mem pref.   vav pref.
my flesh   and flesh   from my bones   bone   the time   this   the Adam   and he said

זֹאת - לֻקֳחָה   מֵאִישׁ   כִּי   אִשָּׁה   יִקָּרֵא   לְזֹאת
dem. pr.   Pual Perf.   n.m.sg.   conj.   n.f.sg.   Nif. Impf.   dem. pron.
f.sg.   3f.sg.   mem pref.   3m.sg.   3f.sg.
this   to take   from man   because   woman   to call   lemed pref.
       she was intensely taken   he being called

And Adam said: this is now bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh; she shall
be called woman, because she was taken out of man.   (Gen. 2:23)

2. וַיְהִי כִּי־הֵחֵל הָאָדָם לָרֹב עַל־פְּנֵי

וַיְהִי	כִּי־הֵחֵל	הָאָדָם	לָרֹב	עַל־פְּנֵי
vav pref. Qal Impf. 3sg.	conj. Hif. Perf. 3msg.	he pref. n.m.sg.	Qal Inf. Constr.	n.c.pl. prep.
for to be	he profaned	the man	great	before

הָאֲדָמָה וּבָנוֹת יֻלְּדוּ לָהֶם

הָאֲדָמָה	וּבָנוֹת	יֻלְּדוּ	לָהֶם
he pref. n.f.sg.	vav pref. n.f.pl.	Pual Pas. Perf. 3c.pl.	lemed pref. p. pron. 3mpl.
ground	dauthers	to bear they were born	to/for them

Now it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born to them (Gen. 6:1)

3. הִנֵּה יוֹם־בָּא לַיהוָה וְחֻלַּק שְׁלָלֵךְ בְּקִרְבֵּךְ

הִנֵּה	יוֹם־בָּא	לַיהוָה	וְחֻלַּק	שְׁלָלֵךְ	בְּקִרְבֵּךְ
interj.	Qal Part. n.m.sg.	lamed pref. pr.n.	vav pref. Pual Perf. 3m.sg.	n.m.sg. p.s. 2fs	bet pref. n.m.sg. p.s. 2fs
behold	day coming	Lord	he divided	booty	in your midst

Behold, the day of the LORD cometh and your spoil shall be divided in the midst of you. (Zech. 14:1)

4. טוֹב־לִי כִי־עֻנֵּיתִי לְמַעַן אֶלְמַד חֻקֶּיךָ

טוֹב־	לִי	כִי־	עֻנֵּיתִי	לְמַעַן	אֶלְמַד	חֻקֶּיךָ
Qal Perf. 3msg.	lemed pref. ps. 1c.sg.	conj.	Pual Perf. 1c.sg.	part.	Qal Impf. 1c.sg.	n.m.pl. p.s. 2m.sg.
good	to me	for	I was afflicted	for the sake of	I learn	your portion

It is good for me that I have been afflicted, that I might learn your statutes. (Ps. 119:71)

Chapter 19 Hithpaʿel Strong Verbs

Practice

    I. Memorize the vocabulary
    II. Memorize the Hithpaʿel Perfect for שָׁמַר, Imperfect, and Participle forms.
    III. Translate the following:

1. וְנִבְרְתִים בַּיהוָה וּבִשְׁמוֹ יִתְהַלָּכוּ נְאֻם יְהוָה

וְנִבְרְתִים	בַּיהוָה	וּבִשְׁמוֹ	יִתְהַלָּכוּ	נְאֻם	יְהוָה
vav prefix	bet prefix	vav + bet prefix	Hithpa. Impf.	Qal Pas. Part.	pr.n.

176

m.s.	3m.p.	n.m.s. w/ps.3m.s.	pr.n.	Piel Perf.1s.
				p.s. 3m.p.
Lord	being said	to walk	and in his name	in the Lord
				I intensely excel them

And the Lord said, and I will intensely excel them in the Lord and in his name they will walk themselves (Zech. 10:12)

2. וַיִּתְהַלֵּךְ חֲנוֹךְ אֶת ־ הָאֱלֹהִים וְאֵינֶנּוּ כִּי ־ לָקַח אֹתוֹ אֱלֹהִים

אֱלֹהִים	אֹתוֹ	לָקַח	כִּי	וְאֵינֶנּוּ	הָאֱלֹהִים	אֶת	חֲנוֹךְ	וַיִּתְהַלֵּךְ
n.m.pl.	SDO p.s.3m.s.	Qal Perf. 3m.s.	conj.	vav pref. adv+ps 3m.s.	he pref. n.m.p.	SDO	pr.n.	vav pref. Hithpa. Impf. 3m.s.
God	him	he took	for	he will not	the God		Enoch	himself walk

And Enoch himself walked with God and he was not for God took him. (Gen. 5:24)

3. וַיִּנָּחֶם יְהוָה כִּי ־ עָשָׂה אֶת ־ הָאָדָם בָּאָרֶץ וַיִּתְעַצֵּב אֶל ־ לִבּוֹ

לִבּוֹ	אֶל	וַיִּתְעַצֵּב	בָּאָרֶץ	הָאָדָם	אֶת	עָשָׂה	כִּי	יְהוָה	וַיִּנָּחֶם
n.m.s. w/ps. 3m.s.	prep.	vav pref. Hithpa. Impf. 3m.s.	bet pref. n.f.s.	he pref. n.m.s.	SDO	Qal Perf. 3m.s.	conj.	pr.n.	vav pref Nif. Impf. 3m.s.
to his heart		himself grieved	in the earth	the man		he made	for	Lord	sorry

And it repented the LORD that he had made man on the earth and it grieved him upon his heart (Gen 6:6)

4. וַתִּתְפַּלֵּל חַנָּה וַתֹּאמַר עָלַץ לִבִּי בַּיהוָה רָמָה קַרְנִי

קַרְנִי	רָמָה	בַּיהוָה	לִבִּי	עָלַץ	וַתֹּאמַר	חַנָּה	וַתִּתְפַּלֵּל
n.f.s. p.s.1c.s.	Qal Perf. 3f.s.	bet pref. pr.n.	n.m.s. p.s.1c.s.	Qal Perf. 3m.s.	Qal Impf. 3f.s.	vav pref. pr.n.	vav pref. Hithpa. Impf. 3f.s.
my horn	she arose	in the Lord	my heart	rejoice	she said	Hannah	herself prayed

בַּיהוָה רָחַב פִּי עַל ־ אוֹיְבַי כִּי שָׂמַחְתִּי בִּישׁוּעָתֶךָ

בִּישׁוּעָתֶךָ	שָׂמַחְתִּי	כִּי	אוֹיְבַי	עַל	פִּי	רָחַב	בַּיהוָה
bet pref. n.f.s. p.s. 2m.s.	Qal Perf. 1c.s.	conj.	n.m.pl. p.s.1c.s.	prep.	n.m.s. p.s.1c.s.	Qal Perf. 3.m.s.	bet pref. pr.n.
in your salvation	I rejoiced	for	my enemies	over	my mouth	he opened	in the Lord

And Hannah prayed and said: My heart rejoices in the LORD; my horn is exalted in the LORD. (1 Sam. 2:1)

Chapter 20   Hif'il Strong Verbs

Practice
    I.   Memorize the vocabulary
    II. Memorize the Hif'il Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.
    III. Translate the following:

1. וְאֶתְּנָה בְרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וְאַרְבֶּה אוֹתְךָ בִּמְאֹד מְאֹד
  adv. bet pref. SDO   vav pref. vav pref. bet pref. n.f.s. vav pref.
          adv.   p.s. 2ms. Hif. Impf. bet pref. p.s. 1c.s. p.s. 1cs Qal Impf.
                         1cs   p.s. 2ms   1cs
  greatly in greatly   you   cause to increase and in you in me my covenant I give

And I will give my govenant between me and you, and I will cause to multiply you exceedingly (Gen 17:2)

2. וְהִפְרֵתִי אֹתְךָ בִּמְאֹד מְאֹד וּנְתַתִּיךָ לְגוֹיִם וּמְלָכִים מִמְּךָ יֵצֵאוּ
  Qal Impf. prep. vav pref. prep. pref. vav pref. adv. bet pref. SDO vav pref.
  3m.p. p.s. 2m.s. n.m.p. n.m.p.   Qal Perf.   adv.   p.s.2m.s. Hif.Perf.
                         1c.s.   1c.s.
                         p.s.2m.s.
  they go out from you and king to nations and I give you great in great you I make fruit

"And I will make you exceeding fruitful and I will make nations of you and kings will go out from you. "(Gen. 17:6)

3. וַהֲקִמֹתִי אֶת - בְּרִיתִי בֵּינִי וּבֵינֶךָ וּבֵין זַרְעֲךָ
                       n.m.s.   vav pref. vav pref. prep. n.f.s.   SDO vav pref.
                       p.s.2m.s. prep.   prep.   p.s.1c.s. constr.   Hif. Perf.
                              p.s.2m.s.   p.s.1.c.s.   1c.s.
  your seed and between and between you between me my covenant I caused to stand up

אַחֲרֶיךָ לְדֹרֹתָם לִבְרִית עוֹלָם
                n.m.s.   prep. pref.   prep. pref. prep.
                           n.f.s.   n.m.p.   p.s.2m.s.
                           constr.   p.s.3m.p.
    forever   for a covenant   to their generations after you

לִהְיוֹת לְךָ לֵאלֹהִים וּלְזַרְעֲךָ אַחֲרֶיךָ
               prep.   vav pref.   prep. pref. prep. pref. prep. pref.
            p.s.2m.s. prep. pref. n.m.p.   p.s.2m.s.   Qal Inf.
                     n.m.s.   Constr.
            p.s.2m.s.
  after you and to your seed to God to you to be

"And I will establish My covenant between me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your seed after you." (Gen. 17:7)

4. יָבֵשׁ חָצִיר נָבֵל צִיץ וּדְבַר־ אֱלֹהֵינוּ יָקוּם לְעוֹלָם

לְעוֹלָם	יָקוּם	אֱלֹהֵינוּ	וּדְבַר־	צִיץ	נָבֵל	חָצִיר	יָבֵשׁ
prep. pref.	Qal Impf.	n.m.p.	vav pref.	n.m.s.	Qal Perf.	n.m.s.	Qal Perf.
n.m.s.	3.m.s.	constr.	n.m.s.		3m.s.		3m.s.
		p.s.1c.p.	constr.				
for ever	he will stand up	and the word of our God		flower	he withers	grass	he dries up

"Grass withers, flower fades but the word of our God will stand up forever." (Isa. 40:8)

5. קוּם לֵךְ אֶל־ נִינְוֵה הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה וּקְרָא עָלֶיהָ

עָלֶיהָ	וּקְרָא	הַגְּדוֹלָה	הָעִיר	נִינְוֵה	אֶל־	לֵךְ	קוּם
prep.	vav pref.	def. pref.	def. pref.	pr.n.	prep.	Qal Impv.	Qal Impv.
p.s.3f.s.	Qal Impv.	adj.f.s.	n.f.s.			m.s.	m.s.
	m.s.						
unto her	and call	the great	the city	to Nineveh		go	arise

כִּי־ עָלְתָה רָעָתָם לְפָנָי

לְפָנָי	רָעָתָם	עָלְתָה	כִּי־
prep. pref.	n.f.s.	Qal Perf.	conj.
n.c.p.		constr.	3f.s.
p.s.1c.s.	p.s.3m.p.		
before me	their evil	she went up	for

"Arise, go to Nineveh, the great city and cry againt it for their wickedness went up before me." (Jonah 1:2)

Chapter 21   Hof'al Strong Verbs

Practice

I.   Memorize the vocabulary
II. Memorize the Hof'al Perfect, Imperfect, and Participle forms.
III. Translate the following:

1. וְהוּכַן בַּחֶסֶד כִּסֵּא וְיֵשַׁב עָלָיו בֶּאֱמֶת

בֶּאֱמֶת	עָלָיו	וְיֵשַׁב	כִּסֵּא	בַּחֶסֶד	וְהוּכַן
bet pref.	prep.	vav pref.	n.m.sg.	bet pref.	vav pref.
n.c.f.	p.s. 3m.sg.	Qal Perf.		n.m.sg.	Hof. Perf.
		3m.sg.			3m.sg.
in truth	in him	and he sat down	throne	in grace	he cause to be established

(Isa. 16:5) בְּאֹהֶל דָּוִד שֹׁפֵט וְדֹרֵשׁ מִשְׁפָּט וּמְהִר צֶדֶק

bet pref.	pr.n.	Qal. Part.	vav pref.	n.m.sg.	vav pref.	n.m.sg.
n.m.sg. constr.		m.sg.	Qal Part. m.sg.			adj. m.sg.
in tabernacle	David	judge	seeking	justice and	skilled and	righteousness

And the throne will be caused to be established in mercy and one will sit on it in truth in the tabernacle of David.

2. (Job 5:23) כִּי עִם־אַבְנֵי הַשָּׂדֶה בְרִיתֶךָ וְחַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה הָשְׁלְמָה־לָךְ

conj.	prep.	n.f.pl. constr.	he pref. n.m.sg.	n.f.sg. p.s.2m.sg.	vav pref. n.f.sg.	he pref. n.m.sg.	Hof. Perf. 3f.sg.	prep. pref. p.s.2f.sg.
for	with	stone	the field	your covenant	and animal	the field	she caused to be at peace	to you

For you shall have a covenant with the stones of the field and the beast of the field shall be at peace with you.

3. (Ps. 22:16) יָבֵשׁ כַּחֶרֶשׂ כֹּחִי וּלְשׁוֹנִי מֻדְבָּק מַלְקוֹחָי וְלַעֲפַר־מָוֶת תִּשְׁפְּתֵנִי

Qal Perf. 3m.sg.	prep. pref. n.m.sg.	n.m.sg. p.s.1c.sg.	vav pref. n.m.sg. constr. p.s.1csg.	Hof. Part. m.sg.	n.m.du. p.s.1c.sg.	vav pref. n.m.sg. constr.	prep. pref. n.m.sg.	Qal. Impf. 2msg. p.s.1c.sg.
he becomes dry	as pottery	my strength	and my tongue	causing to be stuck	my jaw	and to dust	death	brought me

My strength is dried up like a potsherd and my tongue clings to my jaws you have brought me to the dust of death. (Ps. Eng.:22:16; Heb.: 22:15)

Vocabulary

Hebrew	English
אָב	father
אָבַד	to perish
אָבָה	to be willing
אָבַל	to mourn
אֶבֶן	stone (f)
אָדָם	man
אֲדָמָה	ground, earth (f)
אָדוֹן אֲדֹנָי	lord (m)
אָהַב	to love
אוֹ	or
אוֹר	light (f)
אָז	then
אֹזֶן	ear (f)
אוֹת	sign
אָח	brother
אָחוֹת	sister
אֶחָד	one
אָחַז	to seize (v)
אֹהֶל	tent (m)
אַחֵר	another, other
אַחַר	behind, after
אֹיֵב	enemy
אַיִל	ram
אִישׁ	man
אַךְ	only, surely
אָכַל	to eat (v)
אַל	no, not
אֵל	God (m)
אֱלֹהִים	God, gods (m)
אֶלֶף	ox, thousand
אֵם	mother
אִם	if, then
אַמָּה	cubit (f)
אָמַר	to say (v)
אֱמוּנָה	faithfulness, fidelity (f)
אָמֵץ	to be strong, firm, bold
אֱמֶת	truth (f)
אֱנוֹשׁ	man, mankind
אָסַף	to gather (v)
אָסַר	to bind
אָפָה	to bake

181

אַרְבַּע	four
אַרְבָּעָה	four (f)
אֶרֶז	cedar
אָרַךְ	to prolong
אֶרֶץ	earth (f)
אָרַר	to curse (v)
אֵשׁ	fire (f)
אִשָּׁה	woman
אָשֵׁם	to commit a wrong, be guilty
אֲשֶׁר	who, which, what
אֵת	with
בְּאֵר	well (f)
בֶּגֶד	garment
בדל	to separate, divide
בּוֹא	to come, go (v)
בּוֹשׁ	to be ashamed (v)
בָּזַז	to plunder, destroy (v)
בָּחַן	to test (v)
בָּחַר	to choose (v)
בְּכוֹר	first-born, oldest
בָּטַח	to trust (v)
בֶּטֶן	belly, womb (f)
בִּין	to understand (v)
בַּיִת	house (m)
בָּכָה	to weep (v)
בָּלַל	to mix, confound (v)
בָּלַע	to swallow, be consumed (v)
בָּמָה	high place (f)
בֵּן	son (m)
בָּנָה	to build
בֹּקֶר	morning (m)
בָּקַע	to split open (v)
בָּעַר	to burn (v)
בָּקָר	herd, cattle
בקשׁ	to seek
בָּרָא	to create
בַּרְזֶל	iron
בְּרִית	covenant (f)
בָּרַח	to flee (v)
בֵּרַךְ	to bless (v)
בְּרָכָה	blessing (f)
בָּשָׂר	flesh (m)
בַּת	daughter

גָּאַל	to redeem (v)
גִּבּוֹר	mighty (adj)
גִּבּוֹר	hero, mighty one
גָּבַהּ	to be high, proud (v)
גָּדוֹל	great, large
גָּדַל	to be great (v)
גּוֹאֵל	redeemer
גּוֹי	nation, people (m)
גּוּר	to sojourn (v)
גּוֹרָל	lot, portion, share
גִּיל	to rejoice
גָּלָה	to uncover, reveal
גַּם	also, indeed
גַּן	garden
גָּנַב	to steal
גֶּפֶן	vine (f)
גֶּשֶׁם	Rain, shower
דָּבַק	to cleave, cling to
דָּבָר	word, thing (m)
דְּבַשׁ	Honey (m)
דּוֹר	generation
דִּין	to judge
דַּל	poor
דָּם	blood (m)
דְּמוּת	likeness, image (f)
דָּמַם	to be silent (v)
דַּעַת	knowledge (f)
דָּרַשׁ	to seek (v)
דֶּשֶׁא	grass (m)
דֶּרֶךְ	way, road (m & f)
הָיָה	to be, become (v)
הֵיכָל	palace, temple (m)
הָלַל	to praise (v)
הָלַךְ	to walk, go
הִנֵּה הֵן	behold
הָפַךְ	to turn, overturn (v)
הַר	mountain (m)
הָרַג	to kill (v)
הָרָה	to conceive, become pregnant
הָרַס	to break down, destroy
זָבַח	to sacrifice (v)
זֶבַח	sacrifice

זָהָב	gold (m)
זָכָר	male (m)
זָכַר	to remember (v)
זָנָה	to commit fornication, play the harlot (v)
זָקֵן	old
זָקֵן	to be old (v)
זָעַק	to cry out (v)
זָרַע	to sow (v)
זֶרַע	seed
חבא	to hide (v)
חַג	feast, festival (m)
חָגַר	to bind, be girded (v)
חָדַל	to cease (v)
חָדָשׁ	new
חֹדֶשׁ	new moon, month
חָטָא	to sin (v)
חַטָּאת	sin (f)
חָיָה	to live (v)
ח חִיל	to whirl, dance
חַיִל	strength, wealth, army (v)
חוֹמָה	wall (f)
חוּץ	a place outside the house, a street
חָזָה	to see, perceive (v)
חָזָק	strong
חָזַק	to be strong (v)
חַי	life (adj)
חַיָּה	living thing, animal (f)
חָכָם	wise
חָכְמָה	wisdom (f)
חָלָה	to become weak, sick (v)
חָמֵשׁ	five
חֲמִשָּׁה	five (f)
חָנָה	to encamp (v)
חָנַן	to be gracious to, favor (v)
חֶסֶד	goodness, kindness (m)
חָפֵץ	to please, delight (v)
חֹק	statute (f)
חֶרֶב	sword (f)
חָרָה	to become hot, angry (v)
חָשַׁב	to think (v)
חֹשֶׁךְ	darkness (m)
חָתַת	to be shattered, dismayed (v)
טוֹב	good

טָמֵא	to be unclean (v)
יָבֵשׁ	to dry up (v)
יָגַע	to labor, grow weary (v)
יָד	hand (f)
[ידה]	to praise (Hif)
יָדַע	to know (v)
יְהוָה	Yahweh, Lord
יָטַב	to do well (v)
[יכח]	to reprove, rebuke (Hif)
יָכֹל	to be able, capable (v)
יוֹם	day (m)
יוֹמָם	daily
יוֹשֵׁב	inhabitant
יוֹצֵר	potter
יַיִן	wine (m)
יָלַד	to beget (v)
יֶלֶד	male child, boy (m)
יָם	sea (m)
יָנַק	to suck (v)
יָסַד	to found, establish (v)
יָצַר	to form (v)
יָסַף	to add (v)
יָפֶה	beautiful
יָצָא	to go out, come out (v)
יָצַר	to form, shape, fashion (v)
יָרַד	to go down (v)
יָרֵא	to fear (v)
יְרוּשָׁלַ͏ם	Jerusalem (dual)
יָרָה	to teach (v)
יָרַשׁ	to possess, subdue (v)
יֵשׁ	there is, there are
יָשַׁב	to sit, dwell (v)
יָשָׁר	straight, right, just
יִשְׂרָאֵל	Israel
כָּבֵד	to be heavy (v)
כָּבוֹד	glory, honor
כֹּה	thus, so
כֹּהֵן	priest (m)
כּוֹכָב	star (m)
כּוּן	to be fixed, firm, establish (v)
כָּלָה	to complete, finish (v)
כְּלִי	tool, weapon, vessel
כָּסָה	to cover, conceal (v)

185

כֶּסֶף	silver (m)
כפר	(Piel) to cover, make atonement
כֶּרֶם	vineyard
כָּרַע	to knell, bow down (v)
כָּרַת	to cut off, make a covenant (v)
כָּשַׁל	to stumble (v)
כָּתַב	to write (v)
לֹא	no, not
לֵב	heart (m)
לָבַשׁ	to put on, clothe (v)
לַיְלָה	night (m)
לוּן/לין	to lodge, pass the night, abide (v)
לֶחֶם	bread (m)
לָכַד	to seize, capture (v)
לָכֵן	therefore
לָמַד	to learn (v)
לָקַח	to take (v)
לִפְנֵי	before
לָשׁוֹן	tongue (m)
מְאֹד	very, exceedingly
מֵאָה	hundred (f)
מאן	(Piel) to refuse (v)
מָאַס	to reject, despise (v)
מִגְרָשׁ	pasture
מִדְבָּר	wilderness, desert (m)
מָדַד	to measure (v)
מול	to circumcise (v)
מוֹעֵד	appointed time, place
מָה	what?
[מהר]	to hasten (v)
מַחֲנֶה	camp
מַטֶּה	staff, rod, branch, tribe
מוּת	to die (v)
מָוֶת	death (m)
מִגְדָּל	tower, fortress
מוֹשִׁיע	savior, deliverer
מִזְבֵּחַ	altar (m)
מִי	who?
מַיִם	water (m)
מִין	species, kind
מָכַר	to sell (v)
מָלֵא	to be full, fulfill (v)
מָלַט	to escape (v)

מַלְאָךְ	angel, messenger
מִלְחָמָה	war, battle (f)
מָלַךְ	to reign (v)
מֶלֶךְ	king (m)
מַלְכָּה	queen (f)
מַלְוֹת	kingdom (f)
מַמְלָכָה	kingdom
מִנְחָה	offering, gift
מְעַט	few, little
מַעֲשֶׂה	work, deed
מָצָא	to find (v)
מִצְרַיִם	Egypt
מִקְדָּשׁ	sanctuary
מָקוֹם	place (m)
מַרְאֶה	Sight, appearance
מֹשֶׁה	Moses
מָשַׁח	to anoint (v)
מָשַׁל	to rule (v)
מִשְׁפָּחָה	family (f)
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, justice (m)
נְאֻם	utterance (m)
נבא	to prophesy (v)
נָבִיא	prophet (m)
[נבט]	[Hif.] to see, look upon (v)
נֶגֶב	Negev, the dry country, south
נָגַע	to touch, reach (v)
נָגַף	to strike (v)
נָגַשׁ	to approach (v)
נָדַח	to drive out, banish (v)
נָדַד	to flee (v)
נָדַר	to vow (v)
[נהל]	[Pi.] to lead, guide (v)
נָזָה	to spatter, sprinkle (v)
נוּחַ	to rest (v)
נוּס	to flee (v)
נוּעַ	to quiver, stagger, tremble (v)
נָחַל	to take possession, inherit (v)
נַחַל	a valley, wadi (m)
נַחֲלָה	possession, inheritance (f)
[נחם]	to be sorry, have compassion, repent (v)
נָהָר	river (m)
נוּס	to flee (v)
נְחֹשֶׁת	copper, bronze
נָטָה	to stretch out, extend (v)

נָטַע	to plant (v)
נָטַשׁ	to leave, forsake (v)
[נסה]	[Pi.] to test, try (v)
נָסַע	to set out, depart (v)
נַעַר	lad
נַעֲרָה	young woman
נָפַל	to fall (v)
נֶפֶשׁ	life, soul (f)
[נצב]	[Nif.] to take a stand, set (v)
נָצַר	to watch, guard (v)
[נקה]	to be clean, innocent, guiltless (v)
[נקם]	to avenge, take vengeance (v)
נָשָׂא	to lift, carry (v)
[נשׂג]	[Hif.] to reach, attain (v)
נָתַן	to give (v)
נָתַץ	to pull down, break down (v)
סָבַב	to turn around, surround (v)
סָבִיב	around, surrounding
סוֹפֵר	scribe (m)
סוּר	to turn aside (v)
סוּס	horse (m)
סוּר	to turn aside (v)
סָלַח	to forgive (v)
סָפַר	to write, number (v)
ספר	to count; (Piel) to tell, relate (v)
סֵפֶר	book, scroll (m & f)
סָתַר	to conceal (v)
עָבַד	to serve (v)
עֶבֶד	servant (m)
עָבַר	to pass over, through (v)
עֵז	goat
עַד	until, unto
עֵד	a witness, testimony, evidence
עוֹד	yet, still, again
עוֹלָם	forever, eternity (m)
עוּר	to arouse oneself (v)
עָוֹן	iniquity, guilt
עוֹף	bird (m)
עוּר	to arouse, awake
עָזַב	to abandon, leave, forsake (v)
עָזַר	to help (v)
עַיִן	eye, spring (f)
עִיר	city (f)

188

עֹלָה	whole burnt offering (f)
עָלָה	to go up (v)
עַם	people (m)
עָמַד	to stand (v)
עָנָה	to answer, bow down (v)
עָנָן	cloud (m)
עָפָר	dry earth, dust
עֶרֶב	evening (m)
עָרַךְ	to arrange, set in order
עָשָׂה	to do, make (v)
עֶשֶׂר	ten (m)
עֲשָׂרָה	ten (f)
עֵץ	tree (m)
עֵת	time (f)
עַתָּה	now
פָּדָה	to ransom, redeem (v)
פֶּה	mouth (m)
פֹּה	here
פּוּץ	to be scattered (v)
פָּלַל	(Hithpa.) to pray
פֶּן	lest
פָּנָה	to turn toward, face, prepare (v)
פָּנִים	face (faces)
פָּגַע	to meet, intercede (v)
פַּעַם	foot, step, time (f)
פָּקַד	to visit, number (v)
פַּר	young bull (m)
פָּרָה	to be fruitful (v)
פְּרִי	fruit (m)
פַּרְעֹה	Pharaoh
פָּשַׁע	to rebel, transgress (v)
פֶּשַׁע	rebellion, transgression
פָּתַח	to open (v)
צָא	host, army (m)
צֹאן	flock, sheep
צְבָאוֹת	hosts, armies
צֶדֶק	righteousness, just
צְדָקָת	righteousness, just (f)
צַדִּיק	righteous one
צוה	(Piel) to command (v)
צוּר	rock
צָחַק	to laugh (v)
צֶלֶם	image, likeness

189

צָמֵא	to be thirsty (v)
צָעַק	to cry out (v)
צָפָה	to keep, watch (v)
צָרַר	to be in distress (v)
קָבַץ	to collect, gather (v)
קָבַר	to bury (v)
קָדַשׁ	to be holy (v)
קָדוֹשׁ	holy
קֹדֶשׁ	(noun) holy thing
קוֹל	voice, sound (m)
קוּם	to arise (v)
קִיר	wall
קָטֹן	small
קָנָה	to take, possess (v)
קֵץ	end
קָרָא	to call (v)
קֶרֶב	midst
קָרַב	to draw near, approach (v)
קָרוֹב	near
קֶרֶן	horn (f)
קָרַע	to tare (v)
קָשֶׁה	difficult, hard
קֶשֶׁת	bow, rainbow (f)
רָאָה	to see (v)
רֹאשׁ	head, chief (m)
רַב	many, much, great
רֹב	multitude
רָבָה	to be many, multiply (v)
רֶגֶל	foot (f)
רָדַף	to pursue, persecute (v)
רוֹאֶה	seer, prophet
רוּחַ	spirit, wind (f)
רוּם	to be high, exalted (v)
רֹעֶה רוֹעֶה	shepherd
רוּץ	to run (v)
רָחַץ	To wash, wash off
רָחוֹק	far, distant
רָחַץ	to wash (v)
רִיב	to strive, contend (v)
רָנַן	to shout for joy (v)
רַע	evil, רָעָה (f)
רָעָה	to feed, graze, tend (v)
רָעַע	to be wicked, evil (v)

רָקִיעַ	expanse, firmament
רָפָא	to heal (v)
רָצַח	to kill (v)
שָׂבַע	to satisfy (v)
שָׁבַת	to cease, rest (v)
שִׂים	to put, place (v)
שִׁיר	to sing (v)
שִׁית	to put, place, set (v)
שָׂחַק	to laugh, jest (v)
שָׂכַל	to have success, prosper
שָׂמַח	to rejoice (v)
שֶׁמֶן	oil, fat
שָׂנֵא	to hate (v)
שֶׁקֶר	deception, falsehood
שָׂפָה	lip, speech, edge (f)
שַׂר	leader, prince (m)
שָׂרַף	to burn (v)
שָׁאַל	to ask (v)
שֵׁבֶט	rod, staff, scepter, tribe (m)
שָׁבַר	to break in pieces (v)
שֶׁבַע	seven
שִׁבְעָה	seven (f)
שַׁבָּת	Sabbath, rest (m or f)
שָׁבַת	to cease, rest (v)
שָׁדַד	to devastate (v)
שׁוּב	to turn, return (v)
שׁוֹפֵט	judge
שׁוֹפָר	ram's horn, trumpet
שִׁיר	to sing
שׁחה	to bow down, worship (v)
שָׁחַט	to kill, slaughter (v)
שׁחת	to destroy, corrupt (v)
שִׁית	to put, place, set
שָׁכַב	to lay down (v)
שָׁכַח	to forget (v)
שָׁכַן	to settle, dwell (v)
שָׁלוֹם	peace (m)
שֻׁלְחָן	table
שָׁלֵם	to be whole, complete (v)
שָׁלַח	to send, stretch out (v)
שָׁלֹשׁ	three (m)
שְׁלֹשָׁה	three (f)
שָׁם	there

שֵׁם	name (m)
שָׁמֵם	to be astonished, desolate (v)
שָׁמַם	to be appalled, devastated (v)
שְׁמֹנֶה	eight
שְׁמֹנָה	eight (f)
שֶׁמֶשׁ	sun
שָׁנָה	year (f)
שְׁנַיִם	two (m)
שַׁעַר	gate (m)
שָׁמַיִם	heaven, sky (m, du.)
שֶׁמֶן	oil, fat (m)
שָׁמַע	to hear, obey (v)
שָׁמַר	to keep, guard (v)
שָׁפַט	to judge, deliver (v)
שָׁפַךְ	to pour out (v)
שָׁקָח	to water (v)
שָׂרַף	to burn (v)
שֵׁשׁ	six
שִׁשָּׁה	six (f)
שָׁתָה	to drink (v)
שְׁתַּיִם	two (f)
תְּהוֹם	abyss, great deep (f)
תּוֹלְדוֹת	generations (f)
תּוֹעֵבָה	abomination (f)
תּוֹרָה	law, Torah (f)
תָּמִיד	continuously
תָּמַם	to be finished, completed (v)
תְּפִלָּה	prayer (f)
תֵּשַׁע	nine (m)